



LATIN COMPOSITION  
PARTS II AND III  
BASED ON CICERO  
D'OOGHE







# LATIN COMPOSITION

FOR

SECONDARY SCHOOLS

BY

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGHE, PH.D.

PROFESSOR IN THE MICHIGAN STATE NORMAL COLLEGE

PARTS II AND III

*BASED ON CICERO*

GINN & COMPANY

BOSTON • NEW YORK • CHICAGO • LONDON

COPYRIGHT, 1905, BY  
BENJAMIN L. D'OOGHE

---

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

212.6

**The Athenæum Press**  

---

GINN & COMPANY • PROPRIETORS • BOSTON • U.S.A.



## PREFATORY NOTE

The present volume contains Parts II and III of the course in Latin Composition described and outlined in the general preface of Part I. It is likewise the continuation of the author's *Latin Composition to Accompany Greenough, D'Ooge, and Daniell's Second Year Latin*, and references to "Part I" apply to the latter book also.





# CONTENTS

## THE MANILIAN LAW

LESSON	PAGE
1-8. Rules for Agreement . . . . .	1-10
9-23. The Syntax of Nouns . . . . .	10-33

## CATILINE I-IV

24-58. The Syntax of Verbs . . . . .	34-79
59-64. English Auxiliary Verbs . . . . .	80-88

## THE ARCHIAS

65-70. Prepositions . . . . .	89-100
Index of Grammatical Notes . . . . .	101-103



## PART II

BASED ON CICERO'S MANILIAN LAW  
CATILINE I-IV, AND ARCHIAS



# THE MANILIAN LAW \*

## I. RULES FOR AGREEMENT

### LESSON I

1. General Forms of Agreement. — Ref. 26. †

2. Noun in Apposition or as Predicate. — Ref. 28.

3. An appositive frequently stands for a relative clause or for a clause of time or cause. Especially common in this construction are official titles and words like *adulēscēns*, *puer*, *senex*, etc., expressing time of life: —

*Cicero*,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{who} \\ \textit{since he} \\ \textit{when he} \end{array} \right\}$  *was consul, expelled Catiline from the city.*

*Cicerō cōsul Catilinam ex urbe ēiēcit.*

*Cato began to write history when he was an old man.*

*Catō senex historiam scribere instituit.*

4. When a geographical name used as subject is followed by *urbs*, *oppidum*, *civitas*, *flumen*, or the like in apposition, the verb and other words in agreement in the predicate agree with the appositive rather than with the real subject: —

*Athēnae, nōbilissima Graeciae urbs, ā Sullā capta est.*

*Athens, the most noted city of Greece, was taken by Sulla.*

### 5. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

<i>tempus amīcōrum temporibus</i>	<i>to devote time to the demands</i>
<i>trāsmittere.</i>	<i>of friends.</i>
<i>optimus quisque.</i>	<i>all the best.</i>
<i>tantum . . . quantum.</i>	<i>as much as.</i>

\* Classes reading the Catilinarian Orations first will begin with Lesson XXIV.

† These references are to the Grammatical Summary at the end of the book.

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER I

6. 1. The orator <sup>1</sup>was to speak from the Rostra,<sup>2 3</sup> a place which seemed to him most honorable. 2. When a youth,<sup>4</sup> the orator devoted all his time to the demands of his friends. 3. This oration was delivered<sup>5</sup> at Rome, <sup>6</sup>the most noted city of Italy. 4. He was the first to be declared elected (as) prætor. 5. I perceive, fellow-citizens, that the path of honor is always open to all the best. 6. Cicero, who was a wide-awake man, defended Pompey's cause. 7. I ought to rejoice because such a case has been presented. 8. I will show what almost daily practice in speaking can accomplish. 9. Cicero, when he was prætor, spoke on the military command of Pompey. 10. Pompey did not have as much military authority as he wished.

1. Second periphrastic. 2. rōstra, -ōrum, N. 3. See sec. 27, b. 4. adulēscēns, -entis, M. 5. habēre. 6. See Part I sec. 29.

## LESSON II

Noun in Apposition or as Predicate — *Continued*

7. The particle *as* standing before an appositive or predicate noun is not expressed in Latin:—

*Cicero as consul saved his fatherland, Cicerō cōnsul patriam cōservāvit.*

*They addressed Cicero as consul, Cicerōnem cōnsulem appellāvērunt.*

## 8.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

ab bellō discēdere.

*to leave, or give up, the contest.*

cum . . . tum.

*not only . . . but especially.*

vectīgālia aguntur.

*the revenues are at stake.*

vectīgālia exercēre.

*to farm revenues.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 2

9. 1. Mithradates and Tigranes, two very powerful kings, are making war upon our allies. 2. All the allies demand Pompey as commander-in-chief for this war. 3. <sup>1</sup>Since Lucullus has given up the contest, another commander must be chosen. 4. Cappadocia, the kingdom of Ariobarzanes, is entirely<sup>2</sup> in the power of the enemy. 5. The glory of the Roman people was not only great in all other things, but it was especially supreme in the art of war. 6. Pompey ought to be chosen because he is the one man <sup>3</sup>who is feared by the enemy. 7. The revenues of the republic, <sup>4</sup>(which furnish) the embellishments of peace and the sinews for war, are at stake. 8. You should take thought for the property of many citizens. 9. The knights farmed the revenues of Asia. 10. Cicero defended their cause in view of the relationship which he sustained towards them.

1. See Ref. 34. 2. *tōtum* or *tōta*? 3. See Ref. 36. 4. Express by apposition.

LESSON III

10. Agreement of Adjectives. — Ref. 27.

11. When an attributive adjective is used with two or more substantives, it agrees with the nearest, and may be placed *before* or *after* the first substantive or *after* the last:—

Multi filiī et filiae	} <i>many sons and daughters.</i>
Filiī multi et filiae	
Filiī et filiae multae	

But not before the last —

Filiī et multae filiae—

for in that case *multae* would be understood as belonging to *filiae* alone.



When especially emphatic the adjective is repeated with each substantive: —

**Multi filii et multae filiae.**

## 12.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

**praeter ceterās gentis.**

*beyond other nations.*

**dē aliquō triumphāre.**

*to triumph (for a victory) over  
some one.*

**aliquid alicui dētrahere.**

*to deprive some one of some-  
thing.*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTERS 3 AND 4

13. 1. Pompey was of remarkable wisdom and valor. 2. He waged wars on all lands and seas. 3. Cicero says that the Romans were always eager beyond other nations for praise. 4. That king by a single order massacred all the Romans in all Asia. 5. Since that time he has already reigned twenty-three years. 6. Sulla, when he was proconsul, triumphed (for a victory) over Mithradates. 7. The king is devoting all the time that is left <sup>1</sup> to preparing great fleets and armies. 8. Ambassadors and letters were sent even to Spain. 9. Pompey had more good fortune than Sertorius. 10. I shall so speak about Lucullus that my speech will not deprive him of true praise. 11. Pompey's wisdom and valor were remarkable.

1. *ad* with the gerundive.

## LESSON IV

## 14.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

**libertātem imminūtā neglegere.**

*to be indifferent to the infringe-  
ment of liberties.*

**iūs lēgatiōnis.**

*the right of ambassadors.*

FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 5

N.B. Before writing this exercise, review thoroughly the rules for word-order given in the first four lessons of Part I.

15. <sup>1</sup>Can you not, fellow-citizens, defend the great<sup>2</sup> reputation of your sovereignty handed down to you by your ancestors, who were not indifferent to the infringement of their liberties, but, when<sup>3</sup> the right of ambassadors was violated merely by an (insolent) word, desired to destroy Corinth, the ornament of entire Greece? <sup>4</sup>How long will you permit this king to go<sup>5</sup> unpunished, who has slaughtered thousands of our citizens and allies and has punished an ambassador of the Roman people with every kind of torture? Now all the states in all Asia and Greece <sup>6</sup>cherish this same desire: (namely,) <sup>7</sup>that you dispatch the one man by whom the attacks of the enemy can be stayed.

1. Question introduced by *nōne*. 2. Latin, "so great." 3. Latin "because" or "since." 4. *quam diū*. 5. Latin "be." 6. Latin, "wish this same thing." 7. An appositive clause of purpose, see Ref. 118.

LESSON V

Agreement of Adjectives — *Continued*

16. Latin often uses an adjective agreeing with the subject or object, where our idiom requires an adverb modifying the verb: e.g.

<i>I heard him gladly</i>	} becomes {	<i>laetus eum audīvī.</i> ( <i>I, glad, heard him.</i> )
or		
<i>I was glad to hear him</i>		

This adverbial use is exemplified especially with —

*a.* Adjectives of feeling or emotion, as *laetus*, *libēns*, *timidus*, *maestus*, *invītus*, etc.

*b.* Adjectives of manner or description, as *sciēns*, *īns-ciēns*, *prū-dēns*, etc.

c. Adjectives of place, time, or number, as *inferior*, *superior*, *summus*, *prīmus*, *ultimus*, *ūnus*, *sōlus*, etc.

17. When a difference in meaning exists between the use of the adverb and the adjective, the Latin always makes the distinction clear, while the English is often ambiguous.\*

## 18.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

<i>prīmus</i> (-a, -um).	<i>first.</i>
<i>prīmō</i> .	<i>at first, at the beginning.</i>
<i>prīmum</i> .	<i>{ for the first time,</i> <i>{ in the first place.</i>
<i>antecellere omnibus terrīs.</i>	<i>to excel all lands.</i>
<i>vectīgālibus fruī.</i>	<i>to enjoy revenues.</i>

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 6

19. 1. The allies were glad to see Pompey (*or* saw Pompey gladly). 2. We are not the first to carry on war for the sake of allies. 3. The revenues of Asia for the first time hardly sufficed for the defense of that province. 4. Asia should be protected from fear of loss, because in revenues she excels all lands. 5. First fear of loss, then loss itself, caused disaster. 6. We are not the first to defend the safety of allies. 7. Our ancestors waged war with the Carthaginians for<sup>1</sup> the same reason. 8. When the forces of the enemy were not far away, they prudently<sup>2</sup> deserted

\* Compare the ambiguity of the English *I read this letter first* with the clearness of the following Latin versions:—

a. *I read this letter first (I was the first to read this letter), ego prīmus hanc epistulam lēgī.*

b. *I read this letter first (this is the first letter which I read), hanc prīmam epistulam lēgī.*

c. *I read this letter first (for the first time), hanc epistulam prīmum lēgī.*

d. *I read this letter first (then I copied it), hanc epistulam prīmum lēgī (deinde trāscripsī).<sup>a</sup>*

e. *I read this letter first (at first), hanc epistulam prīmō lēgī.*

the fields. 9. Stock-raising, agriculture, and commerce<sup>8</sup> are<sup>4</sup> of great profit<sup>5</sup> to a province. 10. If you wish to enjoy greater revenues, you must free the revenue-collectors from the fear of disaster.

1. *dē*. 2. *prūdēns*. 3. Latin, "sailing of traders." 4. Two datives. 5. *fructus*.

## LESSON VI

20. Agreement of Verb with Subject. — Ref. 30, 31.

21. A collective noun, like *pars*, *multitūdō*, *exercitus*, etc., regularly takes a singular verb. The so-called *construction according to sense*, by which a plural verb is used in such cases, is so rare in the best prose that it is better avoided.

22. With two or more singular subjects referring to *persons* the verb is regularly plural, but if the subjects are *things* the verb usually agrees with the nearest subject. This is especially the case when the subjects are words of related meaning constituting a unity of thought : —

*Rēgī prīncipātus atque imperium trāditum est, the chief command and sovereignty were surrendered to the king.*

*α.* The phrase *senātus populusque Rōmānus* regularly takes a singular verb, as these subjects taken together form a single unit.

### 23.

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

*bona conlocāta habēre.*

*to have property invested.*

*alicui cōsulere.*

*to look out for some one's interests.*

*aliquem cōsulere.*

*to ask some one's advice.*

*māgnī rēfert.*

*it is of great importance.*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 7

24. 1. A great number of the citizens have property invested in that province. 2. First I intend to speak about

the revenue-collectors, whose affairs and fortunes ought to<sup>1</sup> receive your careful attention. 3. The revenue-collectors are honorable and rich; <sup>2</sup>a point not to be overlooked by you. 4. You ought to look out for the interests of these active and industrious men in their absence. 5. For, in the first place, this (fact) is of great importance, that the revenues are the sinews of the commonwealth. 6. In the next place, <sup>3</sup>when many lose great fortunes in Asia, payment becomes difficult at Rome. 7. Disaster and loss<sup>4</sup> of the citizens cannot be separated from disaster and loss to the state. 8. We ought to remember <sup>5</sup>what that same Asia and that same Mithradates taught us at the beginning of the war. 9. The glory of your name and the safety of the allies are involved in this war.

1. Latin, "be for a care to you." 2. Latin, "which thing ought not to be, etc." See sec. 27. *b*. 3. A general condition. See Ref. 43. 4. *detrimentum*. 5. Indir. quest.

## LESSON VII

25. Agreement of Pronouns. — Ref. 29, and Part I sec. 41, 42.

26. When a relative has for its antecedent a noun accompanied by an appositive, the relative may agree with either: —

Flūmen Rhēnus { *quī* or *quod* } agrum Helvētiōrum ā Germānīs dīvidit.

*The river Rhine which separates the territory of the Helvetians from the Germans.*

27. The antecedent of a relative is put in the relative clause —

*a.* When the relative clause stands first: —

Quae pars cīvitatīs calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit, *that part of the state which had brought disaster upon the Roman people was the first to pay the penalty.*

b. When the antecedent is in apposition with the main clause or some word in it:—

Gallia quae terra vīnō abundat, *Gaul, the land that abounds in wine.*

28. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

classem dēprimere.

*to sink a fleet.*

lēgī obtrectāre.

*to object to a law or measure.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 8

29. 1. Asia, the province which we <sup>1</sup>are to defend, is rich and fertile. 2. Cyzicus, a city of Asia which was very famous, was rescued by the valor of Lucullus. 3. Lucullus and Mithradates were great generals. 4. The persistence and wisdom of Lucullus were <sup>2</sup>so great that he <sup>1</sup>deserved to be feared. 5. A great fleet, <sup>3</sup>which was being hurried to Italy, was sunk by the same general. 6. The town Sinope, in which was a residence of the king, was captured. 7. A town which was called Amisus was thrown open to our legions for the first time. 8. The king, stripped of his ancestral realm, fled as a suppliant to other kings. 9. All the allies and subject states were safe. 10. You who oppose this law have not bestowed as much praise on Lucullus as you ought.

1. Second periphrastic. 2. See sec. 22. 3. Place the rel. clause first.

LESSON VIII

30. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

vīs aurī.

*a quantity of gold.*

ē manibus effugere.

*to escape.*

praeter spem.

*beyond expectation.*

## FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 9

31. When Mithradates<sup>1</sup> fled from Pontus, a land which had hitherto been closed to the Roman people, he left behind a very great quantity of gold and silver and all sorts of beautiful things which he had <sup>2</sup>taken as plunder from all Asia, in order that while the Romans <sup>3</sup>were collecting these he might escape to Armenia, which was<sup>4</sup> the realm of his son-in-law.<sup>5</sup> <sup>6</sup>After retreating thither, he was assisted beyond his expectation by the resources of many kings and nations who had been aroused by the alarming<sup>7</sup> report that the Romans had led an army into those regions to plunder a very rich and sacred shrine.

1. See Part I, sec. 18. 2. *diripere*. 3. Attracted into the subjv.  
4. Not attracted, because parenthetical in character. 5. *gener*. 6. Latin,  
"whither (*quō*) when he had betaken himself." 7. *gravis*, -e.

## II. THE SYNTAX OF NOUNS

## LESSON IX

## The Nominative and Vocative Cases (cf. below)

32. The vocative rarely stands first, but is inserted after the first word or words, preferably after a verb or pronoun of the second person. The interjection *O* is usually omitted :—

*Vincere scīs, Hannibal ; victoriā ūtī nescīs, Hannibal, you know how to conquer, but do not know how to use your victory.*

33. The Latin equivalent for English *dear* in address (as in *Dear Sir*) is *cārissimus*, or *optimus*, as *optime* or *cārissime Mārce, my dear Marcus!*

## 34.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

*restat ut dīcam.*

*it remains for me to speak.*

*scientia rei militāris.*

*knowledge of the science of war.*

*homīnēs quī nunc sunt.*

*the men of our day.*



## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 10

35. 1. It remains for me to speak of choosing a general for this war. 2. Who above all others, fellow-citizens, ought to be placed in control of such important interests<sup>1</sup>? 3. You are the only one, Pompey,<sup>2</sup> in whom are (found) the four qualities<sup>1</sup> of a supreme commander. 4. Great knowledge of the science of war, high character, prestige, and good fortune are especially necessary in this war. 5. Pompey went from school to the army of his father, a distinguished general. 6. Has any one waged more wars than Pompey or fought with the enemy more frequently? 7. The fortune of the state trained him in all kinds of warfare. 8. There is nothing<sup>3</sup> pertaining to experience in war<sup>4</sup> which has escaped the knowledge of this man. 9. By your campaigns, Pompey, you have not only waged wars, but also finished them. 10. <sup>5</sup>When you were prætor, my dear Marcus, you said that Pompey had surpassed in fame all the men of our day.

1. *rēs*. 2. See grammar for vocative case of proper nouns in *-ius*.  
3. Latin "placed in." 4. See Ref. 36. 5. See sec. 3.

## LESSON X

## The Accusative Case

36. Direct Object, Cognate Accusative, Adverbial Accusative, Ref. 18, 19, 20, and Part I sec. 457, 467; Place to which, Ref. 105.

37. A cognate accusative is sometimes found after intransitive verbs which do not otherwise govern the accusative, e.g. *vivere vitam*, *currere cursum*, *iter ire*. Such an accusative is regularly limited by an adjective or by a genitive:—

*Vitam iucundam vixit, he lived a happy life.*

The cognate accusative is much more common in poetry than in prose.

38. The neuter of a pronoun or adjective is often used as adverbial or cognate accusative with verbs which would take a different construction of a substantive ; e.g. *illud glōrior, I boast of that*, but *meā victōriā glōrior, I boast of my victory*.

39. Transitive compound verbs meaning to *transport* or *lead across* (*trānsducere, trāicere*, etc.) may take two accusatives or may repeat the preposition before the second accusative ; hence, —

<i>He led the army across the Rhine,</i>	{	<i>exercitum Rhēnum trānsdūxit,</i> <div style="text-align: center; padding: 0 10px;"><i>or</i></div> <i>exercitum trāns Rhēnum trānsdūxit.</i>
--	---	--

## 40.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

*celeritās in cōficiendō.*

*quickness of execution.*

*ab aliquō victōriam reportāre.*

*to win a victory over some one.*

*mare refertum praedōnum.*

*a sea full of pirates.*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER II

41. 1. What words<sup>1</sup> are there which any one can find worthy of the virtue of Pompey? 2. Of what do you boast, Cicero? 3. I boast of the virtues of Pompey. 4. His quickness of execution was <sup>2</sup>greater than (that) of any other general that I have seen. 5. He performed famous deeds<sup>3</sup> and won great victories over his enemies in Italy, Sicily, and Africa. 6. He also lived a good life, a fact<sup>4</sup> of which all these lands are witnesses. 7. He led our legions across the Alps. 8. Then he crossed the mountains into Spain. 9. At the time of the Servile War aid was sought from him in his absence. 10. What harbor is safe, when all the seas are full of pirates? 11. Who would have thought that a single general could finish such a war in one year? 12. Fellow-citizens, <sup>5</sup>how many islands have you protected with your fleets during these years?

1. Latin, "speech." 2. Follow the idiom of the text. 3. *facinus, -oris*, N. 4. *rēs*. Latin, "of which fact." Why? 5. Two datives, as in the text.

## LESSON XI

The Accusative Case — *Continued*

42. Two Accusatives: Direct Object and Predicate Accusative, Ref. 24, Accusative of the Person and of the Thing, Ref. 25; Time and Space, Ref. 138, 21; Greek Accusative or Accusative of Specification.

43. Two accusatives of the same person or thing (direct object and predicate accusative) are used especially after —

*appellāre, to name, call.*      *dīcere, to appoint, name, call.*

*creāre, to elect.*      *facere, to make.*

*reddere, to render* (2d acc. an adjective).

For the passive of *reddere*, use *fieri*.

44. Two accusatives, one of the person and the other of the thing, are commonly found only after *docēre, to teach*, and *cēlāre, to conceal*. Other verbs of this class usually take the ablative with *ab*, *ex*, or *dē* instead of a second accusative. The proper construction in each case is best learned from the lexicon.

45. The Greek Accusative or Accusative of Specification is rare in the best prose. Its place is taken by the ablative.

## 46. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

*senātus populusque Rōmānus.*      *the senate and the Roman people.*

*bellum apparāre.*      *to prepare for war.*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 12

47. 1. Formerly the protection of the sovereign power rendered the fortunes of the allies safe. 2. Shall I complain that Cnidos and Colophon have been captured? 3. You can see the enemy's fleet before the mouth of the Tiber. 4. Cicero calls the disaster at Ostia a disgrace to the republic. 5. If <sup>1</sup>the senate and the Roman people should elect Pompey commander-in-chief, he would soon crush the pirates. 6. Sicily and Africa have for many years been called the

life and breath of the republic. 7. Are you unaware that these lands are in the power of the pirates? 8. Pompey sailed with such speed that the pirates were unable to conceal themselves from him. 9. <sup>2</sup>He made this boast, that in forty-nine days all the pirates were either killed or captured. 10. A fleet of the enemy before the mouth of the Tiber showed<sup>3</sup> the Romans the danger of the republic. 11. Pompey prepared for war at the close of winter.

1. Cf. sec. 22. a. 2. Latin, "he boasted this." Cf. sec. 38.  
3. Latin, "taught."

## LESSON XII

48. Review the Rules of Syntax, Lessons I–XI.

49. Review the following idioms and phrases:—

ab aliquō victōriam reportāre.	māgnī rēfert.
ab bellō discēdere.	mare refertum praedōnum.
alicui cōsulere.	optimus quisque.
aliquem cōsulere.	praeter cēterās gentīs.
aliquid alicui dētrahere.	prīmus — prīmō — primum.
antecellere omnibus terrīs.	restat ut dicam.
bellum apparāre.	scientia rei militāris.
bona conlocāta habēre.	senātus populusque Rōmānus.
celeritās in cōficiendō.	sub iugum mittere.
classem dēprimere.	tantum . . . quantum.
cum . . . tum.	tempus amīcōrum temporibus
dē aliquō triumphāre.	trāsmittēre.
hominēs quī nunc sunt.	vectīgālia aguntur.
iūs lēgatiōnis.	vectīgālia exercēre.
lēgī obtrectāre.	vectīgālibus fruī.
libertātem imminūtā negligere.	

## FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION—CHAPTER 13

50. Pompey so excels other generals that we do not wonder that the peoples<sup>1</sup> of Asia among whom he <sup>2</sup>is passing

the winter call him divine. For it must be confessed that, in comparison with others, his good qualities are conspicuous, and that he restrains not only himself but his army as well. Recall what great disasters the avarice of commanders and of armies has brought upon the state. Money taken from the treasury for the conduct of the war has been left in Rome at interest, and the winter quarters of our legions during these years have destroyed more cities than the arms of the enemy. But this man's army has harmed no peaceful citizen, neither has it compelled any one to contribute money.

1. *nātiō, -ōnis*, F. 2. This is in a parenthetical clause not essential to the thought. Will the verb be in the indic. or in the subjv.? Cf. Ref. 127.

## LESSON XIII

### The Dative Case

51. General Rule for the Dative, Ref. 44; Indirect Object, Ref. 48, Part I sec. 424-426; with Special Verbs, Ref. 49, Part I sec. 431; with Passive Intransitive Verbs, Ref. 50; with Compounds, Ref. 47, Part I sec. 438.

52. The commoner intransitive verbs taking the dative are —

<i>cēdō, yield.</i>	<i>minor, threaten.</i>
<i>cōfidō, trust.</i>	<i>noceō, injure.</i>
<i>crēdō, believe.</i>	<i>nūbō, marry.</i>
<i>diffidō, distrust.</i>	<i>parcō, spare.</i>
<i>faveō, favor.</i>	<i>pāreō, obey.</i>
<i>ignōscō, pardon.</i>	<i>persuādeō, persuade.</i>
<i>imperō, order.</i>	<i>placeō, please.</i>
<i>invidēō, envy.</i>	<i>resistō, resist.</i>
<i>irāscor, be angry with.</i>	<i>serviō, serve.</i>
<i>medeor, heal.</i>	<i>studeō, be eager for.</i>

53. The constructions after verbs (transitive and intransitive) compounded with prepositions are various and depend upon usage or the caprice of the language, rather than upon any clear grammatical distinction. Sometimes the same verb will govern the

dative or the accusative or take the accusative with a preposition with no apparent difference in meaning ; for example, —

<i>to swim to the ships, adnāre</i>	{	nāvīs. ad nāvīs. nāvibus.
-------------------------------------	---	---------------------------------

The following practical suggestions are helpful : —

*a.* The compounds of **sum** — **dēsum**, **obsum**, **praesum**, **prōsum**, **subsum**, **supersum** — always take the dative.

*b.* Compounds expressing motion may take the dative when the motion is *figurative*. When the motion is *literal*, a preposition follows with its regular case, the preposition used being in most cases the same as that with which the verb is compounded : —

*Fear fell upon the army* (figurative motion), *terror exercitui incidit.*

*He fell into the water* (literal motion), *in aquam incidit.*

*c.* In cases of doubt consult the lexicon for the usage of the best writers.

**54.** Note carefully the two constructions *tibi librum dōnō, I give you a book*, and *tē librō dōnō, I present you with a book*; *urbī moenia circumdō, I build walls around the city*, and *urbem moenibus circumdō, I surround the city with walls*.

## 55.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

nōbīs persuādet.

*he persuades us.*

nōbīs persuādētur.

*we are persuaded.*

cōpia dīcendī.

*fluency in speaking.*

difficile dictū.

*difficult to say.*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 14

**56.** 1. <sup>1</sup>We are convinced that Pompey was of great self-control in all matters. 2. He was able to resist the temptations<sup>2</sup> that were wont to delay others. 3. <sup>3</sup>We all know that <sup>4</sup>love of pleasure did not call him from his determined course. 4. Conquering generals used to present their friends

at Rome with Greek statues (*write in two ways*). 5. I do not doubt that all look at Pompey as if (he were) some one sent down from heaven. 6. Formerly, believe me, the magistrates were of such self-control that foreign nations preferred to serve the Roman people rather than rule over others. 7. Pompey lacked<sup>5</sup> neither dignity nor fluency in speaking. 8. It is difficult to say whether he excels the leading men more in dignity, or the lowest in affability. 9. Bring light to those nations, Pompey, that they may see the splendor of our power.

1. Perfect of *persuādeō*, the thought being *we have been persuaded* (and hence are convinced). 2. Latin, "things." 3. *inter omnis cōstat*, with acc. and infin. 4. Translate "love of pleasure" by one word. 5. *dēsum*. In Latin the subject is "neither dignity nor fluency."

## LESSON XIV

### The Dative Case — Continued

**57.** The Dative of Possession, Ref. 51; Agent, Ref. 46; Reference or Interest, Ref. 53.

**58.** In Latin there are four ways of expressing possession:—

*a. Patris est domus, the house is father's.*

*b. Mea est domus, the house is mine.*

The genitive is used (as in *a*) to answer the question *whose is it?* A possessive pronoun is used (as in *b*) for the genitive of a personal pronoun.

*c. Patrī est domus,*  
*d. Pater domum habet,* } *father has a house.*

These answer the question *what has he?*

**59.** The possession of mental, moral, or physical characteristics is best expressed by the verb *sum* followed by the ablative with *in* or by the ablative or genitive of description:—

*Father has great talent,* { *in patre est māgnū ingenium.*  
*pater est māgnō ingeniō.*  
*pater est māgnī ingeni.*



## 60.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

nēminī dubium est.

*no one doubts.*

orbis terrae, or orbis terrārum.

*the earth.*

vehementer pertinēre ad.

*to have much to do with, to  
appertain closely to.*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 15

61. 1. Surely no one doubts that that commander has the highest prestige. 2. <sup>1</sup>As you think about his exploits, it must be acknowledged that no one on earth ever had a more illustrious name. 3. It has much to do with the conduct of a war what opinion the enemy have of the general. 4. The Forum was crowded on the day that he was appointed commander over the maritime war. 5. If the Roman people had not <sup>2</sup>demanding him as commander, <sup>3</sup>such a sudden fall in the price of grain would not have followed. 6. The allies feared because the province did not have a sufficiently strong garrison. 7. Whose arrival checked Mithradates and Tigranes, (who were) threatening Asia with great forces? Pompey's. 8. The Romans suffered a defeat in the kingdom (of) Pontus, which <sup>4</sup>belonged to Mithradates. 9. We must preserve the allies and tributaries. 10. Is any one ignorant of what Pompey's name and fame will accomplish?

1. The dative of reference expressed by the dative plural of the present participle. 2. Latin, "demanded him *for itself*," dat. of ref. 3. Follow the text. 4. Cf. sec. 26.

## LESSON XV

## The Dative Case — Continued

62. The Dative of Purpose or End, Ref. 52 ; with Adjectives, Ref. 45.

63. In the dative of purpose, or end for which, observe, —

a. That the *end for which* is expressed by an abstract noun in the *singular*, never in the plural : —

*Arma erant pueris dōnō (not dōnīs), the arms were (for) gifts to the boys.*

b. That this noun is never modified by an adjective, excepting one expressing degree like *māgnus*, *maximus*, *minor*, etc. : —

*Haec res mihi māgnae cūrae est, this matter is a great anxiety to me.*

c. That this noun is never modified by a genitive.

Therefore, do not translate *the laws are for the benefit of all the citizens* by *lēgēs ūtilitātī omnium cīvium sunt*, but rather *lēgēs ūtilitātī omnibus cīvibus sunt*.

64. Adjectives ordinarily followed by the dative occasionally take other constructions, especially the accusative with *ad* or *in*. *Propior* and *proximus* may take the accusative without a preposition.

65.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

*reliquum est ut dicāmus* (cf. also *it remains for us to say*.  
sec. 34).

*rēs bene gerere.* *to conduct affairs successfully.*

*domī militiaeque.* *at home and in the field.*

*hōc tantum bonī.* *this great blessing.*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 16

66. 1. Crete is an island near to Greece. 2. Pompey's prestige was of great advantage to the Romans. 3. Did not all the states of Crete wish to surrender to him? 4. It was annoying to those that envied<sup>1</sup> Pompey<sup>2</sup> that an ambassador

was sent to him. 5. You can estimate, fellow-citizens, how much influence this prestige has. 6. It remains for us to say a few words about good fortune. 7. We ought to speak about good fortune with <sup>3</sup>fear and trembling. 8. Scipio, Marius, and the other great commanders <sup>4</sup>had not only valor but also good fortune. 9. For the successful conduct of great affairs there was no one like Pompey. 10. At home and in the field, on land and sea, all things seemed to follow his wishes. 11. No one has ever ventured to ask so much for himself or for the commonwealth. 12. The gods have bestowed on us this great blessing.

1. Cf. sec. 52. 2. A *quod*-clause with the indic. 3. Translate by one word. 4. Cf. sec. 59.

## LESSON XVI

### 67.

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

<i>amāns patriae</i> or <i>reī pūblicae</i> .	<i>patriotic.</i>
<i>plūrimum in rē pūblicā valēre.</i>	<i>to have very great influence in public affairs.</i>
<i>grātissimum populō esse.</i>	<i>to be very popular.</i>
<i>facultās dicendī.</i>	<i>eloquence.</i>

## FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 17

68. Although Cicero was persuaded that this great and dangerous war should be intrusted to Pompey, yet Catulus and Hortensius, very distinguished and patriotic men who had very great influence in public affairs, differed with that opinion. They conceded that Pompey alone <sup>1</sup>possessed all the highest qualities, but declared that <sup>2</sup>too much power ought not to be given to one man; and Hortensius especially, who was very popular and, as <sup>3</sup>an orator, excelled in eloquence all the Romans <sup>4</sup>except Cicero, spoke at length against that measure. But <sup>5</sup>even they had to confess that

the Romans <sup>6</sup>would not have retained the sovereignty of the world, had Pompey not been appointed commander against the pirates.

1. Cf. sec. 59. 2. Latin, "that all things ought not, etc." 3. *ut*.  
 4. Express by abl. abs., "Cicero being excepted (*excipere*)."  
 5. *ipse*.  
 6. As *teneō* has no future infinitive we must use *futūrum fuisse ut* with the subjv.

## LESSON XVII

### The Genitive Case

69. General Rules for the Genitive, Ref. 56, Part I sec. 404; Possessive Genitive, Ref. 62; Genitive of Material, Ref. 59; Genitive of Quality, Ref. 64; Subjective Genitive, Ref. 65; Objective Genitive, Ref. 60; Partitive Genitive, Ref. 61.

70. A preposition with its object often takes the place of an objective genitive, especially when the governing noun is modified by a possessive pronoun or by a genitive, hence—*my love for you*, *meus in tē amor* rather than *meus tuī amor*; *the consul's services to the country*, *cōsulis in patriam beneficia* rather than *cōsulis patriae beneficia*.

71. The subjective genitive of the personal pronouns (*meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī*) is not used. Instead of these we should use the corresponding possessives. For example, *a friend of mine* should never be rendered *amicus meī*, but *amicus meus*.

72. With reference to the genitive and the ablative of quality or description the following statements may be made:—

*a.* Designations of *measure, number, time, weight, space, age*, and *rank* are regularly in the genitive:—

*Fossa pedum trium, a ditch of three feet.*

*Puer decem annōrum, a boy of ten years.*

*b.* Descriptions of the body and personal appearance are regularly in the ablative:—

*Homō humill statūrā, a man of small stature.*

c. Qualities that lack permanence are expressed by the ablative. This applies especially to the description of passing emotions and feelings : —

*Bonō animō est, he is of good courage.*

d. Permanent and essential qualities may be expressed by either the genitive or the ablative : —

*Catō singulārī prūdentiā (or singulāris prūdētiaē) erat, Cato was of remarkable sagacity.*

Finally, it should be noted that neither the genitive nor the ablative may stand without an attributive adjective of degree like *māgnus, parvus, summus*, etc.

73. The partitive genitive denotes the *whole* of which a *part* is taken. Hence it is obvious that if not merely a part but the whole is taken there can be no partitive genitive. While then we say *māgna pars hōrum, a great part of these*, using the partitive genitive, we cannot say *omnēs hōrum* for *ALL of these*, but rather *omnēs hī*.

74. It is important to remember that the partitive genitive is not usual after cardinal numerals or *quidam*, but that *ex* or *dē* with the ablative is used instead.

## 75.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

*Pompēiō duce.*

*under the leadership of Pompey.*

*amor in patriam.*

*love of country.*

*pudet mē.*

*I am ashamed.*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 18

76. 1. Both Catulus and Hortensius were very patriotic.  
2. How much authority do you think should be given to one (man)? 3. Under the leadership of Pompey, we shall again<sup>1</sup> adorn this place with the spoils of fleets. 4. Pompey's love of country and knowledge of war were extraordinary. 5. Cicero's friendship for Pompey<sup>2</sup> led him to say

that the latter possessed <sup>8</sup>all the noblest qualities. 6. Was Gabinius a friend of yours? 7. Of all these states the Carthaginians were the most powerful on the sea. 8. What island is so small that it does not defend some part of its coast region? 9. At the time when our ancestors were conquering Antiochus, they were not ashamed to ascend to this place. 10. Was the island Delos of great size? 11. <sup>4</sup>By no means. Of all the islands lying<sup>5</sup> in the Ægean Sea it was almost<sup>6</sup> the smallest. 12. For several years the Romans had not been a match for the pirates.

1. *rūsus*. 2. *addūcere* with *ut* and the subjv. 3. Latin, "all things in the highest degree." 4. *minimē*. 5. Latin, "placed." 6. *prope*.

## LESSON XVIII

### The Genitive Case — *Continued*

77. The Predicate Genitive, Ref. 63; The Genitive with Adjectives, Ref. 57; The Genitive with Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting, Ref. 70.

78. Note the two possible ways of rendering expressions like the following:—

*It is foolish*, *est stultum* or *est stultī*.

*It is folly*, *est stultitia* or *est stultitiæ*.

N.B. *Of these forms of expression the predicate genitive is the more common, and is the only form admissible with adjectives of the third declension.* Hence —

*It is wise*, *est sapientis*, never *est sapiēns*.

79. Among the more common adjectives with the genitive are—

*cupidus*, } *desirous*.  
*avidus*, }  
*cōnsciū*, *conscious*.  
*ignārus*, *ignorant*.  
*peritus*, *skilled*.

*imperitus*, *unskilled*.  
*memor*, *mindful*.  
*immemor*, *unmindful*.  
*particeps*, *sharing in*.  
*expers*, *without a share in*.

plēnus, *full*.inops, *destitute*.egēns, *in want of*.potēns, *ruling, controlling*.impotēns, *weak*.similis, *like*.dissimilis, *unlike*.

80. There are many exceptions to the rule that verbs of remembering and forgetting take the genitive. Note the following: —

a. Neuter pronouns and adjectives after such verbs are always in the accusative.

b. After *recordor* the *thing* remembered is in the accusative, the *person* in the ablative with *dē*.

## 81.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

ars dicendī.

*the art of speaking.*

auctōritātī obtemperāre.

*to submit to authority.*

terrā marīque.

*on land and sea.*

rēs gestae.

*exploits.*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 19

82. 1. No one was more skilled in the art of speaking than Hortensius. 2. Do you recall the things which he said? 3. Gabinius was desirous of appointing Pompey commander-in-chief. 4. The Roman people did not think it wise to submit to his authority. 5. We seem at last to be ruling over all peoples and tribes on land and sea. 6. Pompey did not forget Gabinius. 7. He asked that Gabinius serve as his lieutenant. 8. He thought that Gabinius ought to share in the glory of the general. 9. <sup>1</sup>Certain ones <sup>2</sup>said that Gabinius could not be lieutenant the next year after he had been tribune. 10. I hope that the senate will be mindful of Pompey's exploits. 11. I ought not to be without a share in this war which <sup>3</sup>belongs to me by peculiar right. 12. Nothing but a veto will prevent Cicero from defending the rights<sup>4</sup> of the people.

1. *quidam*. 2. *said . . . not, negāre*. 3. Cf. sec. 58. 4. Sing. in Latin.

## LESSON XIX

The Genitive Case—*Continued*

83. The Genitive with Verbs of Feeling, Ref. 66; with *rēfert* and *interest*, Ref. 67; with Verbs of Judicial Action, Ref. 68; with Verbs of Plenty and Want, Ref. 69.

84. The neuter of a pronoun with *miseret*, *paenitet*, etc., is not in the genitive, but in the nominative as subject.

*Hōc pudet mē, I am ashamed of this* (lit. *this shames me*).

85. The genitive with *rēfert* seems best explained as dependent on some form of *rēs* bound up in the verb. On that theory *rēfert Caesaris* is perhaps equivalent to *rem fert Caesaris*. The ablative singular feminine of the possessive (*meā, tuā, suā*, etc.), used instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns, seems to have agreed originally with the form of *rēs* in the verb. The construction after *interest* follows that of *rēfert* because of the similarity in meaning of the two verbs.

86. With verbs of judicial action the penalty is usually in the ablative, less frequently in the genitive. We may, therefore, say either *capite* or *capitis damnāre*, *to condemn to death*. Beware of using *morte*, *mortis*, in this sense.

87. Most verbs of plenty and want take the ablative. Only *indigeō*, *want*, prefers the genitive.

88.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

<i>alicūius interesse vidēri.</i>	<i>to seem to concern some one.</i>
<i>sī quid Pompēiō factum erit.</i>	<i>if anything happens to Pompey.</i>
<i>quid novī.</i>	<i>something new, anything new.</i>
<i>quō minus . . . hōc magis.</i>	<i>the less . . . the more.</i>

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION—CHAPTER 20

89. 1. It seemed to concern Catulus greatly <sup>1</sup>that all things should not be placed in (the hands of) Pompey alone.  
 2. If anything happens to Pompey, the citizens will remember the wisdom and incorruptibility of Catulus. 3. The orator



was very desirous of <sup>2</sup>expressing his sentiments concerning the opinion of Catulus. 4. The citizens were never weary<sup>3</sup> of <sup>4</sup>bestowing on him their richest favors. 5. If you should do anything new, you would be accused of treason.<sup>5</sup> 6. Catulus was such a man that he lacked neither wisdom nor valor. 7. The less certain human life is, the more the commonwealth ought to derive benefit from the lives<sup>6</sup> of its greatest men. 8. In war <sup>7</sup>it is the part of wisdom to follow expediency. 9. Recall<sup>8</sup> our two greatest wars. 10. Were they not brought to a close by a single commander-in-chief? 11. It remains to speak of the two cities which at one time threatened the Roman supremacy. 12. It seemed to concern you and your fathers greatly that Marius should be appointed general.

1. Infín. clause. 2. Latin, "speaking." 3. *taedet*. 4. Cf. text, § 51. 5. *prōditiō, -ōnis*, F. 6. Latin, "life." The plural, *vītae*, would mean *biographies*. 7. Latin, "it is wise." Cf. sec. 78. 8. Cf. sec. 80. *b*.

## LESSON XX

90. Review the Rules of Syntax, Lessons XIII–XIX.

91. Review the following idioms and phrases:—

*alicūius interesse vidērī.*

*amāns patriae or rei pūblicae.*

*amor in patriam.*

*ars dīcendī.*

*auctōritātī obtemperāre.*

*cōpia dīcendī.*

*difficile dictū.*

*domī militīaeque.*

*facultās dīcendī.*

*grātissimum populō esse.*

*hōc tantum bonī.*

*nēminī dubium est.*

*nōbīs persuādēt.*

*nōbīs persuādētur.*

*orbis terrae or orbis terrārum.*

*plūrimum in rē pūblicā valēre.*

*Pompēiō dūce.*

*pudet mē.*

*quid novī.*

*quō minus . . . hōc magis.*

*reliquum est ut dīcāmus.*

*rēs bene gerere.*

*rēs gestae.*

*sī quid Pompēiō factum erit.*

*terrā marīque.*

*vehementer pertinēre ad.*

## FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 21

92. <sup>1</sup>It is said that Q. Catulus said that it greatly concerned the state that in Pompey's case <sup>2</sup>no new precedent be established; but he seems to have forgotten the many <sup>3</sup>new and important precedents which had already been established in the case of this man with his own hearty approval and <sup>4</sup>that of other influential men of the same rank. <sup>5</sup>For when a mere youth and of an age much below the senatorial grade, <sup>6</sup>military authority and an army <sup>7</sup>were entrusted to him. And though there were some in the senate who said that a <sup>8</sup>man who had held no office ought not to be sent as proconsul, he was sent and finally was made consul before he could legally have held any other office.

1. Latin, "Q. Catulus is said, etc." The Latin prefers the personal to the impersonal construction. 2. Latin, "nothing new." 3. Latin, "so great and so new." 4. The redundant "that" in the phrase "that of" is not expressed in Latin. 5. Latin, "for to him a mere youth." 6. "Military authority," one word in Latin. 7. Cf. sec. 22. 8. I.e. *homō privātus*.

## LESSON XXI

## The Ablative Case

93. General Consideration, Ref. 1; The Ablative of Separation, Ref. 14; Source, Origin, Material, Ref. 15; Degree of Difference, Ref. 7; Comparison, Ref. 6; Time, Ref. 139.

94. The presence or absence of a preposition with the ablative of separation seems to be determined by arbitrary usage rather than by any obvious principle of language. In general, however, it may be said that literal and local separation requires the preposition, but that where the separation is figurative the preposition may be omitted; and, further, that if the ablative denotes persons a preposition is always used.

95. It should not be forgotten that some verbs, compounds of *ab*, *dē*, or *ex*, take the dative (especially of a person) instead of the ablative of separation.

96. Verbs of plenty and want usually take the ablative (cf. sec. 87). With verbs of plenty the ablative may be classified as means, with verbs of want as separation. The commoner verbs of plenty and want are—

<i>abundāre,</i>	} <i>abound in.</i>	<i>privāre,</i>	} <i>deprive of.</i>
<i>redundāre,</i>		<i>spoliāre,</i>	
<i>complēre,</i>	} <i>fill with.</i>	<i>exuere,</i>	}
<i>explēre,</i>		<i>carēre,</i>	
<i>implēre,</i>		<i>vacāre,</i>	
		<i>egēre,</i>	} <i>need.</i>
		<i>indigēre,</i>	

97. The ablative of degree of difference is especially common after the adverbs *ante*, *post*, *īfrā*, *suprā*, and is often expressed by the neuter ablatives *multō*, *paulō*, *nihilō*, *tantō*, *quantō*, *eō*, *hōc*, *quō*.

98. The ablative after comparatives without *quam* comes under the head of the ablative of separation. Such a sentence as *nihil est melius virtūte* means literally, *from virtue* (as a standard) *nothing is better*. The construction is admissible only when the first of the objects compared is in the nominative or accusative.

a. A relative standing after a comparative is always in the ablative: *quam* is never used. Hence:—

*Reason, than which nothing is more godlike, ratiō, quā nihil est dīvinus.*

Never *ratiō, quam quae nihil*, etc.

99. Latin uses the ablative of time in many expressions which according to our idiom seem locative; for example—

*In the Punic war, bellō Pūnicō.*

*At the Roman games, lūdīs Rōmānīs.*

## 100.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

<i>reī pūblicae parum cōsulere.</i>	<i>to have too little regard for the welfare of the state.</i>
<i>in rē pūblicā plūs vidēre.</i>	<i>to have more political insight.</i>
<i>nihil aliud nisi dē hoste cōgitāre.</i>	<i>to think of nothing but the enemy.</i>

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 22

101. 1. These men have too little regard for the welfare of the state. 2. The more political insight they have, the less they will oppose your plans. 3. You chose the only one who could set the hearts<sup>1</sup> of the citizens free from anxiety.<sup>2</sup> 4. At the time of the war with the pirates Italy was in need of grain. 5. The expressed opinion of the whole Roman people must be obeyed. 6. <sup>3</sup>Those leaders will not be ashamed to confess this. 7. The cities of Asia abounded in wealth.<sup>4</sup> 8. They were stripped of their most precious possessions. 9. Those whom we send with military authority make war upon the rich cities of the allies. 10. If our generals thought of nothing but the enemy, we should not <sup>5</sup>be hated by our allies. 11. Do you know <sup>6</sup>how much smaller Cilicia is than Asia? 12. It is not hard to say. 13. Who was general in the Mithradatic war? 14. They see that Pompey is of remarkable virtue. 15. He will abstain<sup>7</sup> from wanton deeds and injuries.

1. Latin, "minds." 2. sollicitūdō, -inis, F. 3. Cf. Ref. 66. 4. divitiae, -arum, F. 5. Latin, "be in hatred among." 6. I.e. "by how much." 7. abstinēre.

## LESSON XXII

## The Ablative Case — Continued

**102.** The Ablative of Agent, Ref. 4; Means, Ref. 10; with *ūtor*, *fruor*, etc., Ref. 17; with *opus* and *ūsus*, Ref. 11; of Accompaniment, Ref. 3; Place, Ref. 101, 102.

**103.** The person *by* whom something is done as the agent is expressed by *ā*, *ab*, with the ablative.

The person *through* whom something is done as the instrument is expressed by *per* with the accusative.

*Caesar was informed by Labienus (agent) through messengers (instrument), Caesar certior factus est ā Labiēnō per nūntiōs.*

**104.** The ablative without a preposition to denote *the way by which* is of frequent occurrence in words like *via*, *iter*, *porta*, *flūmen*, *mare*, etc., and comes under the general head of means or instrument.

*They set out by the Appian Way, Appiā viā profecti sunt.*

**105.** The usual construction with *opus est* is impersonal, the *thing* needed being in the *ablative* and the *person* needing it in the *dative*:—

*Libris mihi opus est, I need books.*

But when the thing needed is expressed by a neuter pronoun or adjective the personal construction must be used:—

*Multa nobis opus sunt, we need many things (lit. many things are necessary to us).*

Note that *opus* and *ūsus* are never declined in this construction. *Ūsus* is much rarer than *opus*.

**106.** The rule that the ablative of accompaniment may omit *cum* in military expressions should be used with caution. Such omission is allowable only when the noun is modified by an adjective other than a numeral. We may therefore write *māgnis cōpiis profectus*

*est, he set out with great forces, without cum ; but must not omit it from cum tribus legiōnibus profectus est, he set out with three legions.*

## 107.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

turpitūdine adfici.

*to be disgraced.*

peritus bellōrum.

*skilled in wars.*

nōbilī locō nascī.

*to be born in high station.*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 23

108. 1. Pompey was the only man who could keep <sup>1</sup>his hands from the money of the allies. 2. The allies rejoiced that Pompey with his army had come into their cities. 3. The Roman people need a man like Pompey in the provinces. 4. <sup>2</sup>To go to Asia <sup>3</sup>one must sail over the sea. 5. The men at home were of such avarice that they used the public funds themselves. 6. The larger fleets we have, the more we are disgraced. 7. They <sup>4</sup>hesitate to place all things in his hands. 8. They act <sup>5</sup>as if they were ignorant of our losses. 9. Servilius, than whom no one was more experienced in all kinds of war, <sup>6</sup>spoke as follows. 10. He said that the state <sup>7</sup>ought to have the benefit of Pompey's self-control and valor. 11. The Manilian law, by which the safety of <sup>8</sup>all nations was established, <sup>9</sup>was upheld by Cicero. 12. In choosing a general for this war there is need of the greatest wisdom. 13. Many of those that disagreed with <sup>10</sup>the opinions of Catulus were born in high station.

1. Latin, "himself." 2. Not infin. 3. Latin, "it must be sailed." 4. For constructions after dubitāre see Part I sec. 167. 5. sē gerere. 6. Latin, "said these (things)." 7. Latin, "ought to enjoy." Cf. text § 59. 8. Latin, "for." 9. cōstituere. 10. ā.

## LESSON. XXIII

The Ablative Case — *Continued*

**109.** The Ablative of Price, Ref. 12; Manner, Ref. 9; Quality or Characteristic, Ref. 13; Cause, Ref. 5; with *dignus* and *indignus*, Ref. 8; Specification, Ref. 16. See also Part I sec. 499.

**110.** Distinguish carefully between the construction used after verbs and expressions of estimation and value (*aestimāre*, *facere*, *dūcere*, *habēre*, etc.) and that used after verbs of buying and selling. The former take the *genitive*, the latter the *ablative*:—

*Voluptātem virtūs minimī facit*, *virtue considers pleasure of the very least account.*

*Victōria multō sanguine stetit*, *the victory cost much blood.*

N.B. The only important exception to this rule is that the four genitives *tantī*, *quantī*, *plūris*, *minōris*, are used after verbs of buying and selling to express relative value.

**111.** English *with* is by no means always translatable by the Latin *cum*. *Cum* is used only with the ablative of accompaniment and the ablative of manner, and not always with them (cf. sec. 106 and 112).

**112.** Note the four ways of expressing manner:—

1. *Celeriter currit* (adverb).
2. *Cum celeritāte currit* (ablative with *cum*).
3. *Summā celeritāte currit* (ablative with an adjective).
4. *Cum summā celeritāte currit* (ablative with an adjective and *cum*).

**113.** To express emphatic cause the Latin uses, instead of the bare ablative, the prepositions *ob* or *propter* with the accusative, *ex*, *dē*, or *ab* with the ablative; or *causā* or *grātiā* with a preceding genitive.

## 114.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

ad hanc rem cōficiendam.	<i>for the accomplishment of this purpose.</i>
quidquid est in mē ingeni.	<i>whatever talent I have.</i>
tantum abest ut.	<i>so far is it from the truth that.</i>
quid est quod.	<i>why is it that.</i>

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 24

115. 1. Evidently<sup>1</sup> Cicero did not consider the arguments<sup>2</sup> of Hortensius of much (value). 2. For the accomplishment of this purpose I urge you not to fear the threats of any one. 3. The Mithradatic wars cost the Romans much blood and treasure. 4. At whose request are you doing this? 5. Do you calculate to win the friendship of Pompey through this case<sup>3</sup>? 6. Whatever talent I have, I willingly<sup>4</sup> offer to you. 7. So far is it from the truth that I am seeking to shun dangers, that I have<sup>5</sup> brought on myself the hostility of many. 8. Clothed with this authority as prætor, I ought to prefer the safety of the provinces to my own advantage.<sup>6</sup> 9. Since such a great multitude is present with such enthusiasm, why is it that we hesitate? 10. I call to witness all the gods that preside over this place. 11. <sup>7</sup>Don't think that I undertook this case because of some advantage to myself. 12. Manilius defended his bill with great courage and perseverance.

1. apertē. 2. sententia, -ae, F. 3. causa, -ae, F. 4. Ablative of manner. Voluntās is peculiar in that it usually stands without cum or an adjective to express manner. 5. suscipere. 6. Plural in Latin. 7. See Part I sec. 99.



# CATILINE I

## III. THE SYNTAX OF VERBS

### LESSON XXIV

#### Questions

116. Direct Questions, Ref. 119; Indirect Questions, Ref. 120, Part I sec. 217-219; Rhetorical Questions, Ref. 121, Part I sec. 90.

117. Common interrogatives are —

quis (substantive), *who?*

quid (substantive), *what?*

quī, quae, quod (adjective), *what? of what sort? what kind of?*

quō (of direction), *whither?*

ubi (of place), *where?*

quandō (of time), *when?*

quōmodo or quō modō (of manner), *in what way? how?*

118. Moods in questions:

Direct questions are in the Indicative.

Indirect questions are in the Subjunctive.

Rhetorical questions are usually in the Subjunctive, less often in the Indicative.

119. When the object of a verb of saying or mental action is the antecedent of a relative pronoun, the Latin usually incorporates the antecedent into the relative clause and changes the relative clause into an indirect question. Hence the English *you see the speed with which this was done* becomes in Latin *quā celeritāte haec sint gesta vidētis*, i.e. *you see with what speed this was done*.

## 120.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

proximā nocte.	<i>last night.</i>
superiōre nocte.	<i>night before last.</i>
ūnus quisque nostrum.	<i>every single one of us.</i>
novīs rēbus studēre.	<i>to be eager for a revolution.</i>

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER I

121. 1. Did not Catiline abuse the patience of the senate? 2. <sup>1</sup>What shall we say of his unbridled audacity? 3. Every single one of us knows where you were last night. 4. What plan did you make night before last? 5. Who of us is ignorant that you are eager for a revolution? 6. Do we seem to be doing enough for the commonwealth or not? 7. The orator asks whether the consuls ought to endure the fury of Catiline. 8. <sup>2</sup>Did the state lack authority or the consul valor? 9. Have you heard <sup>3</sup>the decree of the senate which we have against you, Catiline? 10. A dangerous citizen ought to be restrained by more severe penalties than the bitterest foe. 11. <sup>4</sup>Catiline was not led to death, was he? 12. Who is ignorant why Ahala killed Mælius?

1. Rhetorical question. 2. Latin, "was authority lacking to, etc."  
3. Cf. sec. 119. 4. What answer does the question expect?

## LESSON XXV

122. The Hortatory and Jussive Subjunctive. — Ref. 75.

123. Prohibitions. — Ref. 76, Part I sec. 99.

## 124.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

vidēre nē quid rēs pūblica dētrī-	<i>to see to it that the common-</i>
mentī capiat.	<i>wealth suffers no harm.</i>
senātūs cōnsultum.	<i>a decree of the senate.</i>
in singulōs diēs crēscere.	<i>to increase day by day.</i>
certā dē causā.	<i>for a special reason.</i>

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION—CHAPTER 2

125. 1. Who will see to it that the commonwealth receives no harm? 2. When was C. Gracchus killed? 3. I don't know when he was killed. 4. Let us intrust the commonwealth to the consuls by a decree of the senate. 5. Do not allow the edge of our authority to grow dull. 6. Where is the decree of the senate? 7. It is shut up in tablets. 8. Catiline, you ought to have been put to death at once. 9. Did Catiline lay aside his effrontery or did he confirm it? 10. Let us not condemn the consul for remissness. 11. <sup>1</sup>What shall I say of the enemy's leader whom we see within the walls? 12. There is no one who does not confess that the number of the enemy is increasing daily. 13. What did Cicero fear that the patriots<sup>2</sup> would say? 14. Don't <sup>3</sup>make a move against the commonwealth.

1. Rhetorical question. 2. boni. 3. Latin, "move yourself."

## LESSON XXVI

126. The Potential Subjunctive.—Ref. 109, Part I sec. 94, 95.

127. The Optative Subjunctive.—Ref. 95, Part I sec. 83, 84.

128.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

suī conservandī causā.

*to save themselves.*

mihi crēde.

*take my advice.*

caedis oblivīscere.

*dismiss murder from your mind.*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION—CHAPTER 3

129. 1. Catiline, I wish that you had changed your mind. 2. May he take my advice and dismiss murder from his mind. 3. Do you remember what I said about Manlius? 4. When did I say that he would be in arms? 5. Was it

not on the twenty-first of October? 6. I am inclined to think that you are not mistaken in the day. 7. <sup>1</sup>I hope that the chief men of the state will flee from Rome to save themselves. 8. May all your plans be checked. 9. Catiline would be satisfied with the slaughter of the optimates. 10. Let us seize Præneste on the first of November. 11. You might have known that that colony was protected by my guards. 12. I might say that you do nothing which I do not see. 13. Don't wonder at this attack. 14. Would that he had not asked <sup>2</sup>what I said.

1. Express "I hope that . . . will flee" by the opt. subjv. 2. Indir. question.

## LESSON XXVII

130.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

<i>priore nocte.</i>	<i>night before last.</i>
<i>ubinam gentium sumus?</i>	<i>where in the world are we?</i>
<i>apud Laecam.</i>	<i>at Læca's.</i>
<i>id temporis.</i>	<i>at that very time.</i>

## FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 4.

131. <sup>1</sup>Can you deny, Catiline, that you and certain others whom I see here in the senate were at Læca's night before last? But where in the world are we, when I, the consul, ask the opinion on public affairs of men who at that very time are plotting the destruction of us all? I found out that very night, Catiline, how you had apportioned the parts of Italy; whom you had selected <sup>2</sup>to leave at Rome; whom to take with you. And when I heard that two Roman knights had been found who promised to kill me that very night, I fortified my house and shut them out when they came early in the morning to salute me.

1. Potential subjv. 2. Not infin.

## LESSON XXVIII

**132.** Sequence of Tenses. — Ref. 135, 136, Part I sec. 105–107, 111–114.

**133.** The rules for tense-sequence do not apply to subordinate clauses with the indicative, but only to those with the subjunctive.

**134.** After *nōn dubitō quīn* and in *indirect questions* the English future active is regularly expressed by the subjunctive of the first periphrastic conjugation, present after primary tenses and imperfect after secondary.

*I do not doubt that my father will think the same, nōn dubitō quīn pater idem exīstimātūrus sit.*

*I did not doubt that my father would think the same, nōn dubitābam quīn pater idem exīstimātūrus esset.*

**135.** When a subjunctive depends on a subjunctive the sequence is as follows:—

*a.* The Present Subjunctive is followed by primary tenses.

*b.* The Imperfect, Perfect, and Pluperfect subjunctive are followed by secondary tenses.

*Nesciō quid causae sit cūr nullās ad mē litterās dēs (dederis, datūrus sīs).*

*Nesciō quid causae fuerit cūr nullās ad mē litterās darēs (dedissēs, datūrus essēs).*

*Nesciēbām quid causae  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{esset} \\ \text{fuisset} \end{array} \right\}$  cūr nullās ad mē litterās darēs (dedissēs, datūrus essēs).*

**136.** When a subjunctive clause depends on an infinitive, supine, gerund, or participle, its tense is regulated by the tense of the verb in the principal clause:—

*I had made up my mind to come to you to see you, cōstitutēram ad tē venīre ut tē vidērem.*

*a.* But a perfect infinitive is usually followed by secondary tenses even when the verb in the principal clause is primary:—

*I seem to have said enough (to show) why the war is necessary, satis multa verba videor fēcisse quārē esset hōc bellum necessārium.*

**137.** Remember that conditions contrary to fact are not affected by the laws of tense-sequence.

**138.** Though the laws of tense-sequence are in general quite closely observed, it should be remembered that they are not inflexible and that many exceptions occur. In Latin, as in English and other languages, when writers wish to make the narration vivid they will speak of past events as present and so disregard tense-sequence. Sometimes, too, writers are careless and irregularities result.

**139.****IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

*quae cum ita sint.*

*since this is so.*

*grātiām habēre.*

*to be grateful.*

*cōnsul dēsīgnātus.*

*the consul elect.*

*aliquem petere.*

*to attack some one.*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 5

**140.** 1. There is no doubt that Catiline will go forth from the city. 2. He says that Catiline set out that the Manlian camp might not long for its general. 3. You know what the reason is why you can no longer associate with us. 4. Catiline knew what the reason was why he could no longer associate with them. 5. Since this is so, why did he hesitate<sup>1</sup> to go forth from the city? 6. The consul said that the citizens were grateful<sup>2</sup> because they had escaped. 7. Some thought that if Catiline had been killed, it would have been more advantageous for the common safety. 8. If you ask my advice, I urge you<sup>3</sup> not to attack the consul elect. 9. Cicero asks whether or not Catiline is about to go into exile. 10. Do not hazard the safety of the commonwealth. 11. Let us not

do that which is <sup>4</sup>too merciful. 12. I know why your competitors will plot against you.

1. See Part I sec. 167. 2. See Ref. 35. 3. Negative purpose clause.  
4. Express by the comparative.

## LESSON XXIX

141. The Subjunctive of Purpose. — Ref. 117, 118, Part I sec. 129–131, 137.

142. The conjunction *ut* may be omitted —

- a. Often after *volō, nōlō, mālō, oportet, necesse est, and licet*.  
b. Regularly after the imperatives *fac* and *dīc*.  
c. After verbs of *permitting, urging, commanding, and warning*, especially in short sentences.

Examples: —

*Volō amēs meam cōstantiam, I wish you to love my firmness.*

*Fac cōgitēs; take thought.*

*Moneō tē dēsīnās furere, I advise you to cease your raging.*

143. Remember the use of *ut* in short parenthetical clauses depending on something to be supplied, as — *ut ita dīcam, so to speak; ut alia omittam, not to speak of other things, etc.*

144. After verbs of fearing *nē* is translated by *that* and *ut* by *that not*; *nē nōn* is sometimes used for *ut* and must be employed when the main verb is negatived: —

*Nōn vereor nē tuus filius nōn respondeat, I do not fear that your son will not reply.*

### 145.

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

*omnium nostrum vīta.*

*the lives of us all.*

*prīdiē Kalendās.*

*the day before the Kalends.*

*ut āiunt.*

*as they say.*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 6

146. 1. What was there which could please Catiline?  
 2. I do not fear that the citizens do not hate you. 3. Did Catiline kill his wife that he might make his home vacant for a new marriage? 4. He feared that the ruin of his fortunes was impending. 5. He stood in the comitium on the day before the Kalends to kill the chief men in the state. 6. There is no one who does not know how you attempted to kill the consul elect. 7. I pass over that <sup>1</sup>disgraceful deed <sup>2</sup>to speak of those things which pertain to the lives of us all. 8. May that dagger be wrested from your hands. 9. <sup>3</sup>I would like to pass this over in silence. 10. Cicero sent Catiline out of the city that he might more easily avoid his thrusts. 11. May the good fortune of the Roman people oppose your madness. 12. <sup>4</sup>Don't drive your dagger into the consul's body. 13. Not to speak of all those (matters), what shall I say concerning your private disgrace?

1. One word. 2. Not infin. 3. See sec. 126. 4. Give in three ways.

## LESSON XXX

147. The Subjunctive of Characteristic. — Ref. 36, Part I sec. 144–146.

148. Pure and Relative Clauses of Result. — Ref. 122, 125, Part I sec. 150, 154.

149. *Too*, followed by an adjective and infinitive, is rendered in Latin by a comparative followed by *quam ut* and the subjunctive:—

*This is too high to climb, hōc est altius quam ut id āscendāmus.*

150. The following are among the expressions followed by the subjunctive of characteristic:—



est quod, *there are grounds why.*

nihil est quod,

nihil est causae quod, } *there is no reason why.*

quid est quod,

quae causa est quod, } *what is the reason that or why is it*  
 quid est causae quod, } *that.*

N.B. Instead of quod, cūr or quā rē may be used.

a. Distinguish between quid est quod with the subjunctive and quid quod (*what of the fact that*) with the indicative.

151. Relative adverbs, especially ubi, unde, quō, not infrequently introduce a clause of result; ubi (*where*) then equals ut ibi (*so that there*), unde (*whence*) equals ut inde (*so that from there*), and quō (*whither*) equals ut eō (*so that thither*):—

*He built a bridge where they could cross, fēcit pontem ubi trānsire possent.*

The same adverbs are sometimes used to introduce a purpose clause.

## 152.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

paulō ante.

*a short time ago.*

post hominum memoriam.

*within the memory of man.*

quō animō.

*with what feelings.*

hunc mihi timōrem ēripe.

*free me from this terror (lit. take this terror from me).*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 7

153. 1. Cicero so talked with Catiline that he seemed to be moved by pity. 2. <sup>1</sup>He should have been moved by hatred. 3. There was no one that saluted him. 4. There was no one that did not fear<sup>2</sup> him. 5. <sup>3</sup>Why is it that all the men of consular rank left the benches empty a short time ago? 6. There were some who thought that Catiline ought to leave the city. 7. Catiline was not the man to reverence the authority of the state. 8. You are the only one within the

memory of man <sup>3</sup>who has murdered citizens with impunity. 9. You are too bold <sup>4</sup> to fear the power of the law. 10. What of the fact that the whole country is in fear on your account alone? 11. With what feelings ought this to be endured? 12. <sup>5</sup>I would prefer that <sup>6</sup>you depart somewhere out of my sight. 13. Free the fatherland from terror. 14. Did Catiline have a place <sup>7</sup>to go to?

1. A pluperfect subjunctive of an unfulfilled obligation. 2. See synonyms. 3. Follow the idiom of the text. 4. *audāx*. 5. Potential subjv., see sec. 126. 6. Cf. sec. 142, *a*. 7. Lat., "whither he might go."

### LESSON XXXI

#### 154.

#### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

*domī meae.*

*at my house.*

*referre ad senātum.*

*to lay a matter before the senate.*

*alicui vim et manūs inferre.*

*to lay violent hands on some one.*

#### FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 8

155. The citizens knew that Catiline deserved death, and wished to lay violent hands on him. There were many, too, who felt that they were in great peril because they and Catiline were encompassed by the same city walls. <sup>1</sup>Knowing this, Catiline, to avoid suspicion, wished to give himself into custody and even dared to go to the consul and ask that he keep him at his own house. But Cicero <sup>2</sup>refused to receive him and tried to persuade him to go into exile <sup>3</sup>by making him perceive <sup>4</sup>what the senators thought of him; <sup>5</sup>for Catiline had previously said that he would lay the matter before the senate and obey the authority of that body.

1. Abl. abs. 2. Lat., "said he could not receive him." 3. *cum* with imperf. subjv. 4. Subjv. of result. 5. *nam Catilīna*.

## LESSON XXXII

156. Substantive Clauses of Result. — Ref. 123, Part I sec. 161–162.

157. Clauses introduced by *quīn* and *quō minus*. — Ref. 124, Part I sec. 166–167.

158. The principal uses of *quīn* are as follows: —

<i>quīn</i> ( <i>quī</i> , adv. <i>how</i> or <i>why</i> , and <i>nē</i> , <i>not</i> )	I. In a principal clause with the indicative.	<i>a.</i> Interrogative, <i>why not</i> , introducing a rhetorical question with the <i>indicative</i> . <i>b.</i> Corroborative, <i>indeed</i> , <i>verily</i> , <i>surely</i> , <i>nay</i> , etc.
	II. In a subordinate clause, as introductory conjunction to a subjunctive.	<i>a.</i> For <i>quī nōn</i> , <i>quae nōn</i> , <i>quod nōn</i> , after <i>nēmō</i> , <i>nūllus</i> , <i>nihil</i> , <i>quis</i> . <i>b.</i> After negated verbs of <i>hindering</i> and <i>opposing</i> . <i>c.</i> For English <i>that</i> , after the following expressions: — <i>nōn dubitō</i> , <i>nōn est dubium</i> , <i>quis dubitat</i> , etc. <i>nōn multum abest</i> , <i>nōn procul abest</i> , <i>paulum abest</i> , etc.

## 159.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

*animum indūcere.*

*to make up one's mind.*

*est tantī.*

*it is worth while.*

*iussū cōsulis.*

*at the command of the consul.*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 9

160. 1. Catiline was not the man to reform. 2. Would that you had made up your mind to go into exile. 3. There is no doubt that Catiline will go to Manlius. 4. The consul saw what a storm of unpopularity was threatening him. 5. There was no one who did not know that the eagle had been sent forward. 6. Who doubts that Catiline used to

worship that silver eagle? 7. Nay, he even had a shrine<sup>1</sup> for it at his house. 8. It is worth while to endure the burden of unpopularity for the sake of the commonwealth. 9. Cicero caused Catiline to set out for Manlius. 10. It is necessary that you separate yourself from the good. 11. What caused him to make war upon his country? 12. It remains for us<sup>2</sup> to speak of praise and glory. 13. There is nothing which I will not do at the command of the consul.

1. *prō*, with the abl. 2. Not infin.

### LESSON XXXIII

161. Causal Clauses introduced by *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, and *quandō*. — Ref. 35; Part I sec. 176.

162. Causal Clauses introduced by *cum* and *quī*. — Ref. 34, Part I sec. 180, 181.

163. *Quod* and *quia* give a reason founded on *fact*. When the subjunctive is used the speaker does not assign the reason as his own, but as another's; and the mood depends on the principle of implied indirect discourse.

164. *Cum* gives the *logical* reason based on the view of the speaker or springing from the attendant circumstances. The cause being thus viewed as a mere probability, the mood must be subjunctive.

165. *Quoniam* and *quandō* introduce as a reason a self-evident or admitted fact, and naturally take the indicative. *Quandō* is really a temporal conjunction and is not often used to introduce a causal clause.

166. Cause is not infrequently expressed by a participial clause:—

*The legate kept his soldiers in camp because he feared the enemy, lēgātus metuēns hostīs militēs castrīs continuit.*

**167.** A relative clause has either the indicative or the subjunctive mood. A relative clause with the indicative simply states a fact. The subjunctive in a relative clause shows the following varieties:—

Relative Clauses with the Subjunctive.	{	Cause.
		Concession.
		Purpose.
		Result.
		Characteristic.
		Implied indirect discourse.
		Clauses of limitation.
		Clauses dependent on an infinitive or subjv. (subjv. by attraction).
	{	Formal indirect discourse.

*a.* By clauses of limitation are meant such expressions as **quod sciam**, *so far as I know*; **quod audierim**, *so far as I have heard*, etc.

**168.****IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

**iacēre humī.**

*to lie on the ground.*

**lēgem rogāre.**

*to propose a law.*

**grātiā referre.**

*to return a favor, make a requital.*

**FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTERS 10, 11**

**169.** 1. <sup>1</sup>Would that he had gone whither his mad desire has long been hurrying him. 2. Catiline desired war because it brought him a sort of incredible delight. 3. Since he lies on the ground and endures all sorts of hardships, he will soon be worn out. 4. He had an <sup>2</sup>opportunity of showing his endurance of cold. 5. I drove you from the consulship because you wished to harass the state. 6. What hindered Cicero from throwing<sup>3</sup> Catiline into chains? 7. He feared the laws which had been proposed concerning the punishment of a Roman citizen. 8. Since you have been raised

so quickly to the highest power, you ought to make a requital to the Roman people. 9. You <sup>4</sup>who are a man known only through yourself ought not to be neglectful of the safety of your (fellow-)citizens. 10. So far as I know, dangerous citizens are always punished with death.

1. Cf. sec. 127. 2. Cf. sec. 151. 3. Latin, "leading." 4. Relative clause of cause.

### LESSON XXXIV

**170.** Substantive Clauses introduced by *quod*. — Ref. 128; Part I sec. 208, 209.

**171.** The *quod*-clause of fact with the indicative is used in the following cases:—

1. After a demonstrative pronoun or adverb (*hōc, illud, id, inde, ex eō, proptereā, ideō, etc.*) to define; or to call emphatic attention to, something stated in the main clause.

2. After adverbs like *bene* or *male* with verbs like *facere, fieri, accidere, evenire*, when the fact stated in the *quod*-clause is the fortunate or unfortunate occurrence.

3. In the sense of *as to, as for, as to the fact that*, to introduce a statement to which a reply is to be made.

Examples are —

1. *We are wise in this, that we follow nature, in hōc sumus sapientēs quod nātūram sequimur.*
2. *It had happened very opportunely that ambassadors had come, opportunē acciderat quod lēgātī vēnerant.*
3. *As to your congratulating me, I am sensible of your kindness, quod mihi grātulāris, āgnōscō hūmānitātem tuam.*

**172.** Substantive clauses with *quod*, substantive clauses with *ut* or *nē*, and infinitive clauses with subject accusative are constructions at times so nearly equivalent in Latin and in their English translation that it becomes difficult to determine which construction should be used. Sometimes more than one construction is

possible with relatively little difference in meaning. The following distinctions are of some practical value:—

1. Verbs of happening are regularly followed by the subjunctive with *ut* or *ut nōn*; but if modified by *bene* or *male* or an adverb of similar meaning, a substantive clause with *quod* follows (cf. sec. 171. 2), or rarely an infinitive with subject accusative:—

*It happened that Caesar was present, accidit ut Caesar adesset.*

<i>It happened fortu- nately that Caesar was present</i>	} <i>opportūnē accidit</i> {	<i>quod Caesar aderat.</i>
		<i>Caesarem adesse.</i>

2. The demonstratives *hōc*, *illud*, *id*, are followed —

- a.* By a *quod*-clause of fact with the indicative (see sec. 171. 1).
- b.* By an *ut*- or *nē*-clause with the subjunctive.
- c.* By an infinitive clause.

As for the choice between *b* and *c*, observe that the construction to be used is determined by the nature of the principal verb. The presence of the demonstratives has no effect upon the construction. For example, in *I urge this upon you, that you do not lose courage*, the principal verb *hortor* shows that the subjunctive is to follow (*hortor tē hōc, nē animum dēmittās*). On the other hand in *I perceive this, that you are losing courage*, the principal verb *intellegō* shows that the infinitive is to follow (*hōc intellegō, tē animum dēmittere*).

3. *accēdit*, *it is added*, is followed by either a *quod*-clause or an *ut*-clause, with the general distinction that the *quod*-clause adds a fact already known, while the *ut*-clause adds a new proposition which may or may not be a fact. Practically *accēdit ut* is the more common.

4. *quid quod*, *what of the fact that*, is followed by the indicative (cf. sec. 150. *a*).

## 173.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

idem sentīre.	<i>to have the same sentiments.</i>
optimum factū.	<i>best to do.</i>
in aliquem animadvertere.	<i>to punish some one.</i>
in perpetuum.	<i>forever.</i>

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 12

174. 1. This one thing<sup>1</sup> cannot be doubted, <sup>2</sup>that all good citizens have the same sentiments. 2. As to the fact that I have not punished that gladiator with death, I do not judge it the best thing<sup>1</sup> to do. 3. It is added that illustrious citizens honored themselves by killing Saturninus. 4. So far as I know, the conspiracy of Catiline was suppressed by Cicero. 5. It unfortunately happened that there were some who did not see the things<sup>1</sup> which threatened. 6. I fear this, that if you punish him, you will win unpopularity. 7. There was no one who did not confess that a conspiracy had been formed. 8. In this one respect<sup>8</sup> Catiline is to be feared, (namely) that some in this body are <sup>4</sup>giving their support to his conspiracy. 9. I fear that it<sup>5</sup> will not be suppressed forever. 10. It happened that he had gathered the others into the same place.

1. This word need not be expressed. 2. A quod-clause. 3. rēs. 4. corrōborāre. 5. Feminine as referring to the conspiracy.

## - LESSON XXXV

175. Review the Rules of Syntax, Lessons XXIV–XXXIV.

176. Review the following idioms and phrases:—

ad hanc rem cōficiendam.	apud Laecam.
alicui vim et manūs inferre.	caedis obliviscere.
aliquem petere.	certā dē causā.



cōsul dēsīgnātus.  
 domī meae.  
 grātiā habēre.  
 grātiā referre.  
 hunc mihi timōrem ēripe.  
 iacēre humī.  
 id temporis.  
 idem sentīre.  
 īn aliquem animadvertere.  
 in perpetuum.  
 in singulōs diēs crēscere.  
 lēgem rogāre.  
 mihi crēde.  
 novīs rēbus studēre.  
 optimū factū.  
 paulō ante.  
 post hominū memoriā.

priōre nocte.  
 proximā nocte.  
 quae cum ita sint.  
 quid est quod.  
 quidquid est in mē ingenī.  
 quō animō.  
 referre ad senātum.  
 rei pūblicae parū cōsulere.  
 senātus cōsultum.  
 suī cōnservandī causā.  
 superiōre nocte.  
 tantum abest ut.  
 turpitūdine adfici.  
 ubinam gentium sumus?  
 ūnus quisque nostrum.  
 vidēre nē quid rēs pūblica dētri-  
 menti capiat.

### FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 13

177. <sup>1</sup>Although the consul knew that <sup>2</sup>wicked citizens had banded themselves together to destroy the city, yet he did not think best to kill Catiline, because he feared that <sup>3</sup>if Catiline alone should be removed, the disease of the commonwealth, relieved for a short time by his punishment, would become worse, the remainder being alive. He therefore <sup>4</sup>strongly urged this, that Catiline depart from the city with all his followers and separate himself from the <sup>2</sup>loyal citizens. He promised further that on Catiline's departure there would be such courage in all, that all things would be brought to light and punished.

<sup>1</sup> See Ref. 37. 2. Translate by one word. 3. See Ref. 39. 4. vehementer hortārī. Cf. sec. 172. 2. b.

# CATILINE II

## LESSON XXXVI

**178.** Temporal Clauses with *postquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, *simul ac*, etc. — Ref. 134, Part I sec. 184, 185.

**179.** Observe that in these temporal clauses an English pluperfect is usually translated by a Latin perfect.

**180.** When *postquam* is used after an accusative or ablative of time, the pluperfect is used and the word is usually divided (*post . . . quam*): —

*The battle was fought four days after he arrived, pūgnātum est post quārtum diem quam pervēnerat.*

### 181. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

urbī ferrō flammāque minitārī.	<i>to threaten the city with fire and sword.</i>
alicui ferrum ē manibus extorquēre.	<i>to wrest a sword from some one's hands.</i>
locō movērī.	<i>to lose one's vantage-ground (lit. to be moved from one's place).</i>

### FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER I

**182.** 1. When Catiline went forth, the city rejoiced. 2. He was cast out because he threatened the city with fire and sword. 3. After the sword had been wrested from his hands, he grieved. 4. Since this is so, let us rejoice. 5. The man was conquered as soon as he had been driven into open brigandage. 6. Catiline left the city <sup>1</sup>only a few

hours after the first oration was delivered. 7. It happened very fortunately that he left the city standing. 8. <sup>2</sup>Shall I grieve because he did not carry out a blood-stained sword? 9. He felt that he was overthrown, as soon as he had lost his vantage-ground. 10. When the citizens understood<sup>5</sup> that there was no danger, they no longer feared. 11. What of the fact that we can now wage a regular war? 12. It happened that Catiline's dagger was busy not only in the Forum but even within private houses.

1. pauci. 2. Ref. 121. 3. intellegere.

### LESSON XXXVII

183. Temporal Clauses with *cum*. — Ref. 132; Part I sec. 192, 193.

184. The conjunction **cum** is one of the most frequent in Latin. In three of its uses it is followed by the indicative and in three by the subjunctive.

#### A. Indicative uses of *cum*.

1. Defining the time of the principal verb; purely temporal, not descriptive; especially in the combinations *eō tempore cum*, *eō diē cum*, *nunc cum*, *olim cum*, *nūper cum*, *tum cum*, *diū est cum*, and the like.

2. *Cum* = *when suddenly*. The preceding clause then begins with *vix* (*hardly*), *iam* (*already*), or *nōn dum* (*not yet*), or an adverb of similar value, the effect of the whole being the emphatic statement of a sudden and surprising occurrence. This construction is called by grammarians *cum inversum*, because the logical relation of the clauses is inverted, the principal thought being expressed by the *subordinate* clause: *hardly had I begun to speak, when suddenly he entered*, *vix loquī incēperam cum* (*subitō*) *ingressus est*.

3. To express action exactly coincident with that of the main verb. The principal and subordinate verb are then in the same tense.

- B. Subjunctive uses of *cum*. {
1. *Cum* causal, *since*.
  2. *Cum* concessive, *though*.
  3. *Cum* descriptive, with the *imperfect* or *pluperfect* subjunctive, describing the circumstances accompanying or preceding the action of the main verb.

## 185.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

tālis quālis.	<i>such as.</i>
vītae periculō.	<i>at the risk of life.</i>
molestē ferō.	<i>I take it ill.</i>
aes aliēnum contrahere.	<i>to incur debts.</i>

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 2

186. 1. There were some who accused Cicero, after he had let Catiline go. 2. Catiline was so dangerous a foe that he ought to have been killed. 3. Hardly had I said this, when suddenly many defended him. 4. I shall remove him, as soon as I judge that all peril has been driven away from you. 5. When<sup>1</sup> you saw the enemy openly, you could fight openly. 6. So far as I know, he went forth with few companions. 7. Would that all men were such as they ought to be! 8. It happened that many did not believe what<sup>2</sup> I said. 9. The consul took it ill because Catiline did not lead out all his forces with him. 10. How great debts he had incurred at the time when he left the city! 11. When I saw what men remained<sup>3</sup> at Rome, I was overwhelmed with fear. 12. You may perceive from this how powerful they are.

1. Latin, "then when." 2. *ea quae*. 3. *manēre*.

## LESSON XXXVIII

187. Temporal Clauses with *antequam* and *priusquam*. — Ref. 131, Part I sec. 197, 198.

188. Temporal Clauses with *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*. — Ref. 133, Part I sec. 202.

189. The perfect indicative with *antequam* and *priusquam* is especially common when the main clause is negative and the main verb in the historical perfect: *hostēs nōn prius pūgnā excessērunt quam ducem concidere vidērunt*, *the enemy did not cease from battle before they saw their leader fall*.

190. The indicative in a clause with *antequam* and *priusquam* states an actual occurrence; a subjunctive, on the other hand, shows that the event was assumed or purposed, but did not actually take place at all. The sentence above (sec. 189) is a good example of the force of the indicative; but compare the following: *ante pāx est facta quam tēlum conicerētur*, *peace was made before a weapon was thrown*. Here the implication is that the weapon *was not thrown*, and the subjunctive is used.

## 191.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

*vadimōnium dēserere.*

*to forfeit one's bail.*

*dīlēctum habēre.*

*to make a levy.*

*hesternō diē.*

*yesterday.*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 3

192. 1. I did not despise that army, before Metellus had made a levy. 2. What of the fact that some have forfeited their bail? 3. They collapsed before I showed them the edict of the *prætor*. 4. They flit about in the Forum until they incur great debts. 5. As long as you remain here, remember that those who have deserted the army are not to be feared. 6. What are you thinking about? 7. I know what you are thinking about. 8. I stood near the *Curia*

until I saw who had Etruria. 9. Catiline fled before he had led forth his soldiers from the city. 10. Catiline did not flee before he had led forth his soldiers from the city. 11. Yesterday, while I was standing near the Curia, he came into the senate. 12. They waited until he made known all his plans.

## LESSON XXXIX

193.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

nōn iam.

*no longer.*

cum aliquō familiārissimē vīvere.

*to live on intimate terms with  
some one.*

oppressus aere aliēnō.

*overwhelmed with debt.*

## FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 4

194. After all the citizens saw that a conspiracy had been openly made, and when there was no one at Rome, overwhelmed with debt, who had not joined<sup>1</sup> this incredible league of crime, the consul thought that there was no longer room for mildness and that all corrupt and infamous characters must be cast out. Catiline had already set out; but as long as the other assassins who lived on intimate terms with him remained, the commonwealth could not be <sup>2</sup>restored to health. The consul, therefore, pointed out the way, and commanded all to depart. "If you are willing to hasten," <sup>3</sup>said he, "you will overtake Catiline before he reaches<sup>4</sup> the camp of Manlius."

1. Latin, "added himself to." 2. levāre. 3. inquit. 4. pervenīre.

## LESSON XL

## Conditional Sentences

195. General Statements. — Part I sec. 225-229.

196. Conditional Sentences with the Indicative. — Ref. 38.

197.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

<i>adsuēfactus frīgore perferendō.</i>	<i>trained to endure cold.</i>
<i>in eādē mente permanēre.</i>	<i>to continue of the same mind.</i>

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 5

198. 1. <sup>1</sup>It was added that no one was bolder than he. 2. If you wish to look into his different pursuits, let me tell you what I know. 3. There was no one in that army who was not trained to endure cold. 4. If he can endure hunger and thirst, they will proclaim him a brave man. 5. If his companions follow<sup>2</sup> him, the commonwealth will be fortunate. 6. If these bands of desperate men leave<sup>2</sup> the city, we shall be happy. 7. If the desires of men are moderate, they should be endured. 8. What of the fact that these scoundrels think of nothing but robbery? 9. If they seek nothing but revels, <sup>3</sup>who can endure it? 10. If my consulship shall have removed them, it will have added many ages to the republic. 11. There was no king whom the Romans feared. 12. If all things on land and sea have been subdued, what remains? 13. If they continue<sup>2</sup> of the same mind, I will not suffer them to remain.

1. Cf. sec. 172. 3. 2. Do not forget that the English present often refers to future or even future perfect time and should be translated accordingly. 3. A rhetorical question.

## LESSON XLI

Conditional Sentences — *Continued*

199. Conditional Sentences with the Present or Perfect Subjunctive. —  
Ref. 39.

## 200. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

aliquid ad aliquem dēferre.	<i>to report something to some one.</i>
castra pōnere.	<i>to pitch camp.</i>
bellum alicui indīcere.	<i>to declare war upon some one.</i>

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 6

201. 1. There were some who said that Catiline was exceeding shy. 2. If I should be able to accomplish this, I would order them to go into exile. 3. I reported the matter to the senate <sup>1</sup>on the day that I called them together. 4. <sup>2</sup>Hardly had Catiline entered when the senators left their seats empty. 5. If Catiline should come, who would salute him? 6. It happened that the chief men of that body regarded him as a very cruel enemy. 7. If I should cast citizens into exile by a (mere) word, I should be called a violent consul. 8. If Catiline comes, who will salute him? 9. <sup>3</sup>There was the added fact that he had been at Læca's (house) that night. 10. <sup>4</sup>I fear this, that Catiline has not declared war upon the Roman people in his own name. 11. Where has Manlius pitched his camp? 12. Don't wait until I go to Massilia.

1. Cf. sec. 184. A. 1. 2. Cf. sec. 184. A. 2. 3. hūc accēdēbat. Cf. sec. 172. 3. 4. Cf. 172. 2.



## LESSON XLII

Conditional Sentences — *Continued*

202. Conditional Sentences with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive. — Ref. 40.

203. Conditions Contrary to Fact with the Indicative in the Apodosis. — Ref. 41.

204. The uses of a past indicative in the apodosis of a condition contrary to fact may be summarized as follows: —

1. With the verbs *oportet*, *decet*, *dēbeō*, *possum*, *necesse est*, *opus est*.

2. With verbs in the first or second periphrastic conjugation.

3. The past of *sum* with *longum*, *aequum*, *aequius*, *difficile*, *melius*, etc., in such expressions as *longum erat*, *it would be tedious*; *difficile erat*, *it would be difficult*; *melius fuerat*, *it would have been better*.

N.B. In this construction the imperfect indicative regularly refers to present time and the perfect or pluperfect to past time.

## 205.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

*vī et minis.*

*with threats of violence.*

*est mihi tantī.*

*it is worth my while.*

*praeter ipsius voluntātem.*

*contrary to his own desire.*

*potius quam.*

*rather than.*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 7

206. 1. If Catiline had changed his mind, he would have changed his course to flight and exile. 2. If he had given up his plan of making war, he would have been called innocent by many. 3. If I were to cast him out with threats of violence, I should be considered a very cruel consul. 4. If it were worth while, I would not hesitate to bear the storm of unpopularity. 5. If you had driven him out, you could have averted from us the danger of war. 6. It would have been

better if you had set out for Rome. 7. If you let Catiline out, I fear this, <sup>1</sup>that he will go to Manlius. 8. If he has set out from Rome, let us pray that he be not about to lead an army against us. 9. If they should hear that he has gone to Massilia, they would complain of this more than fear it. 10. If you were innocent, it would not be necessary for me to use <sup>2</sup>threats of violence. 11. If something had happened contrary to your desire, it would be difficult to go.

1. Cf. sec. 172. 2. What case after *ut*or?

## LESSON XLIII

207.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

omnibus rebus ornatus.  
adquirere ad fidem.

*supplied with everything.*  
*to add to one's credit.*

## FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 8

208. We all know <sup>1</sup>the man who was most to be feared by us; but now <sup>2</sup>it fortunately happens that a wall is between us and him and we no longer fear him. But what about the others? Why is it that they remain at Rome? These are composed of many classes of men who could <sup>3</sup>have been saved if they had been willing to listen to me. Of these classes there is none which is more shameless than that of the rich who are in debt. They are supplied with everything, and if they were willing to take from their possessions and add to their credit, we should find them better citizens. If they expect new accounts from Catiline, they are greatly mistaken.

1. Cf. sec. 119. 2. Cf. sec. 171. 2. 3. Present infinitive in the Latin idiom after a past tense, of *possum*.

## LESSON XLIV

**209. General Conditions.** — Ref. 43, Part I sec. 240.

**210. Conditional Clauses of Comparison with *ac sī, ut sī, quasi*, etc.** — Ref. 42, Part I sec. 243.

**211. A few important facts:—**

*a.* A Particular Condition refers to a definite act or series of acts occurring at some definite time, as, *if Cæsar is present, he will conquer.*

*b.* A General Condition refers to any one of a class of acts which may occur (or may have occurred) at any time, as, *if (or whenever) Cæsar is present, he always conquers.*

*c.* There is often no distinction in form between the particular and the general condition, and the types of conditions commonly known as Simple, Future, and Contrary to Fact may be either particular or general in character according to the meaning conveyed. Often, however, a general condition appears in some one of the forms described in the references above (209), and these should be thoroughly mastered.

*d.* General conditions are often introduced by *cum* or *ubi* in the sense of *whenever, if at any time.*

**212.** Comparisons are often made by two indicative clauses the first of which is introduced by *ut* (or *sicut, quem ad modum, tamquam*), *as*, and the second by *ita* (or *sic, item*), *so*:—

*As you sow, so will you reap, ut sementem fēceris, ita metēs.*

**213.** *ut . . . ita* (or *sic*) are often used in the sense of *though . . . yet* and are followed by the indicative.

**214.** *The same as* is expressed by *īdēm*  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{quī.} \\ \text{ac.} \\ \text{atque.} \end{array} \right.$

*Cicero felt the same as we, Cicerō īdēm sēnsit*  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{quod} \\ \text{ac} \\ \text{atque} \end{array} \right\}$  *nōs.*

## 215.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

rērum potiri.

*to get control of affairs.*

aetate adfectus.

*well along in years (lit. affected  
by age).*

eos hoc moneo.

*I give them this advice.*

sumptuosius se iactare.

*to make a display of extrava-  
gance.*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 9

216. 1. <sup>1</sup>Whenever they are overwhelmed with debt, they despair. 2. <sup>1</sup>If you should be overwhelmed with debt, you would despair. 3. They wish to get control of affairs just as if the commonwealth <sup>2</sup>were in a disturbed condition. 4. Whenever they attempted to accomplish this, I (always) gave the same advice to them as to the rest. 5. If you <sup>3</sup>pray to the immortal gods, they give aid. 6. If they obtain <sup>4</sup>that which they desire, it will have to be given up to some gladiator. 7. They desired the blood of the citizens just as if they hoped to be kings. 8. Though Manlius was well along in years, yet he was strong on account of his training. 9. As the second class wished for power, so the third class thought of proscriptions. 10. If the soldiers of Sulla had not made a display of extravagance, they would not have fallen into debt. 11. If you desire to be saved, I give you this advice.

1. Examine sentences 1 and 2 carefully. How do the conditions differ? 2. Translate by one word. 3. orare. 4. Fut. perf.

## LESSON XLV

**217.** Clauses with *dum*, *modo*, *dummodo*, denoting a Wish or Proviso.  
— Ref. 55, Part I sec. 255.

**218.** Remember that the negative in the clause of proviso is *nē*, not *nōn*.

**219.**

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

negōtium male gerere.

*to manage business matters un-  
successfully.*

quō modō.

quem ad modum.

quā ratiōne.

quō pactō.

*in what way, how.*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 10

**220.** 1. Though they have now for a long time been overwhelmed by debt, they never emerge. 2. Provided they go from the city, let them betake themselves to that camp. 3. There is no doubt that the fourth class was of a mixed character. 4. <sup>1</sup>So far as I have heard, these soldiers <sup>2</sup>are apt to be slow debtors. 5. I do not understand how they can live honorably, if they are willing to die basely. 6. <sup>3</sup>If you perish with many, you perish with less pain. 7. Let them perish, provided that their neighbors do not know of it. 8. The assassins were so numerous that the prison could not hold them. 9. If they had not managed this business unsuccessfully, they would not have been in debt. 10. How will those wretches learn how to brandish the dagger, if Catiline perishes<sup>4</sup>? 11. I do not fear you, Catiline, provided there is a wall between you and me.

1. Cf. sec. 167. *a.* 2. First periphrastic of *sum*. 3. A general condition. 4. What tense in Latin?

## LESSON XLVI

**221. Concessive Clauses.** — Ref. 37, Part I sec. 247, 248.

**222.** Distinguish between *quamquam*, *although*, introducing a subordinate clause of concession, and *quamquam*, *and yet*, introducing a new proposition, as in *quamquam* quid loquor (*in Cat. I § 22*), *and yet, why do I speak?* (See also *in Cat. I §§ 24 and 30*.)

**223.** *Quamvis* is regularly used only in expressions involving comparison or degree. It is therefore often found with adjectives and adverbs, as *quamvis malī*, *however wicked*, *quamvis dives*, *however rich*, *quamvis multum*, *however much*.

**224.** *Licet* (*it is granted*) is properly a verb in the present tense. Hence, by sequence of tenses, it is used only with the present or perfect subjunctive.

**225.** *Tamen* (*nevertheless*) is often expressed in Latin after a concessive clause when its equivalent does not appear in English.

**226.****IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

*respondere alicui.*

*to be a match for some one or something.*

*aliquā rē egere.*

*to lack something.*

*valdē iacere.*

*to be completely overthrown.*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER II

**227. 1.** Even if Catiline should have this body-guard, he would not be a match for our forces. **2.** However much this war is to be feared, our zeal ought not to fail. **3.** Oppose to that gladiator, although he is worn out and wounded, the flower of all Italy. **4.** <sup>1</sup>It may be conceded that he lacks everything with which we are supplied, nevertheless he will draw up his forces against us. **5.** And yet I do not fear that such vices will conquer so many virtues. **6.** Even if

we <sup>2</sup>had said nothing about these matters, we could have compared the causes themselves. 7. Whenever the vices fight on one side and the virtues on the other, the gods always give the victory to the virtues. 8. However low that robber lies, he will oppose to us his army of outcasts. 9. Since Catiline is in the wooded heights of Etruria, I do not think he is greatly to be feared. 10. You will conquer in a contest of this kind provided your zeal does not fail.

1. licet. 2. omittere.

## LESSON XLVII

**228.** Review the Rules of Syntax, Lessons XXXVI–XLVI.

**229.** Review the following idioms and phrases:—

adquirere ad fidem.	negotium male gerere.
adsuēfactus frigore perferendō.	nōn iam.
aes aliēnum contrahere.	omnibus rēbus ornātus.
aetate adfectus.	oppressus aere aliēnō.
alicui ferrum ē manibus extor- quere.	potius quam.
aliquā rē egere.	praeter ipsius voluntatem.
aliquid ad aliquem deferre.	quā ratione, quem ad modum, quō modō, quō pacto.
bellum alicui indicere.	rerum potiri.
castra ponere.	respondere alicui.
cum aliquo familiarissimē vivere.	sumptuosius se iactare.
dilectum habere.	talis qualis.
eōs hoc moneō.	urbī ferro flammāque minitari.
est mihi tantī.	vadimonium deserere.
hesternō diē.	valde iacere.
in eādem mente permanere.	vi et minis.
molestē ferō.	vitae periculō.

## FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — CHAPTERS 12 AND 13

230. While provision was being made for affairs in the city by the brave consul, Metellus had been sent into the Gallic territory to check Catiline's every movement and attempt. Although the danger threatening the fatherland was the greatest in the memory of man, Cicero desired so to conduct matters, if in any way it could be done, that without any excitement all the wicked should suffer punishment and all the good should be preserved. Although this seemed hardly to be hoped for, yet Cicero promised it to the citizens, relying not on human wisdom but on the help of the immortal gods. For the gods, as if they wished to protect their temples, showed<sup>1</sup> by unmistakable signs that they were not far away.

## 1. dēmōnstrāre.



# CATILINE III

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE

**231.** The following Table shows the changes made in moods and tenses when passing from Direct to Indirect Discourse, and should be thoroughly mastered.

### I. PRINCIPAL CLAUSES

#### A. Declaratory Sentences

DIRECT DISCOURSE	INDIRECT DISCOURSE
Present Indicative	becomes Present Infinitive.
Imperfect	“ Perfect Infinitive.
Perfect } Indicative	
Pluperfect }	
Future Active Indicative	
Future Passive Indicative	“ fore ( <i>futūrum esse</i> ) <i>ut</i> with the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive.
Future Perfect Indicative	“ fore ( <i>futūrum esse</i> ) <i>ut</i> with the Perfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive ( <i>rare</i> ).
Active Subjv. Present in the apodosis (conclusion) of a condition	“ Future Infinitive.
Passive Subjv. Present in the apodosis (conclusion) of a condition	“ fore ( <i>futūrum esse</i> ) <i>ut</i> with the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive.
Active Subjv. Imperfect or Pluperfect, in the apodosis (conclusion) of a condition	“ Future Participle with <i>fuisse</i> .
Passive Subjv. Imperfect or Pluperfect, in the apodosis (conclusion) of a condition	“ <i>futūrum fuisse ut</i> with the Imperfect Subjunctive.

N.B. The present infinitive *posse* often has a future force :—*tōtius Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērant*, *they hope that they shall be able to get possession of entire Gaul.*

**B. Interrogative Sentences****DIRECT DISCOURSE****INDIRECT DISCOURSE**

Indicative	becomes	{ Infinitive if the question is rhetorical. Subjunctive if the question is real.
Subjunctive	remains	Subjunctive.

N.B. Questions either real or rhetorical, used immediately after a verb of *asking*, are treated as indirect questions and take the subjunctive.

**C. Commands, Prayers, Wishes, Prohibitions****DIRECT DISCOURSE****INDIRECT DISCOURSE**

Imperative	becomes	{ Present Subjunctive after a primary tense. Imperfect Subjunctive after a secondary tense. The negative is <i>nē</i> .
Subjunctive, Hortatory or Optative,	remains	{ Subjunctive, though tense may be changed by law of tense-sequence.

N.B. A prohibition with *nōlī* and the infinitive becomes the hortatory subjunctive with *nē*.

**II. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES**

Subordinate clauses of all kinds have the verb in the subjunctive. The tense is determined by the following rules:—

**DIRECT DISCOURSE****INDIRECT DISCOURSE**

Present } Indicative	becomes	{ Present Subjunctive after a primary tense. Imperfect Subjunctive after a secondary tense.
Future }		
Perfect } Indicative	"	{ Perfect Subjunctive after a primary tense. Pluperfect Subjunctive after a secondary tense.
Future Perfect }		
Imperfect Indicative	"	{ Perfect Subjunctive after a primary tense. Imperfect Subjunctive after a secondary tense.
Pluperfect Indicative	"	{ Perfect Subjunctive after a primary tense. Pluperfect Subjunctive after a secondary tense.
Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive—remain the same.		

N.B. Remember that the Perfect Infinitive is usually followed by secondary tenses even when the verb in the principal clause is primary. Cf. sec. 136 a.

**232.** The usual verbs of *saying* introducing a direct or an indirect quotation are *dicō*, *aiō*, and *inquam*. These verbs are used as follows:—

*dicō* regularly stands before its expression, and is followed by either direct or indirect discourse. When the dependent clause is negative *negō* should be used, not *dicō nōn*.

*aiō* is usually followed by indirect discourse, and may stand before or after or be inserted in the expression. The subject of *aiō* regularly stands immediately before it, and should not be separated from it.

Sometimes *aiō* introduces direct discourse, especially in the proverbial *ut aiit*, *as he says*; *ut aiunt*, *as they say*. (Cf. Cic. *in Cat.* I § 15.)

*inquam* (which has the force of the perfect as well as of the present) is used only with direct discourse and is always inserted in the quotation. The subject of *inquam* usually stands directly after it. "*Ubi*," *inquit Caesar*, "*sunt milites*?" "*where are my soldiers?*" *said Caesar*.

## LESSON XLVIII

**233.** Declaratory Sentences in Indirect Discourse.—Ref. 87, Part I sec. 259–262. See also Table, sec. 231.

### 234. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

<i>vīta omnium vestrum.</i>	<i>the lives of you all or the lives of all of you.</i>
<i>paucis ante diēbus.</i>	<i>a few days ago.</i>
<i>urbem condere.</i>	<i>to found a city.</i>

**235.** The circumlocution fore *ut* with the subjv. is used not only for the future *passive* indicative of direct discourse, but also for the future *active* when the verb has no future active participle.

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION—CHAPTER I

**236.** 1. You see to-day, fellow-citizens, that the lives of you all have been snatched almost from the jaws of fate.

2. Because of the supreme love of the immortal gods for you, I know that your children will be saved from fire and sword. 3. We know that Romulus founded this city. 4. I think we ought to raise him to the immortal gods. 5. I promise you that he will be <sup>1</sup>honored by our posterity. 6. I hear that fires were being placed under the temples and shrines of the city. 7. He said that he had warded off the swords drawn against the commonwealth. 8. Cicero said that he would briefly set forth these matters to the citizens. 9. <sup>2</sup>He was informed that these matters would be investigated by the senate. 10. The most active leaders of this war have been left at Rome. 11. You know, fellow-citizens, that I was always looking out for your safety. 12. These things had been disclosed in the senate a few days ago.

1. Latin, "in honor among." 2. *certior fieri*.

## LESSON XLIX

**237. Interrogative Sentences in Indirect Discourse.** — Ref. 89, Part I sec. 266. See also Table, sec. 231. •

**238. Commands, Prayers, Wishes, Prohibitions, in Indirect Discourse.** — Ref. 82, Part I sec. 267. See also Table, sec. 231.

**239. Distinguish between an Indirect Question and a question in Indirect Discourse.** The former is the subject or (more usually) the object of a verb of *asking*, and is regularly expressed in the subjunctive mood. (Cf. sec. 116.) The latter is a question transferred from direct to indirect discourse after a verb of *saying* or *thinking*. For example, the rhetorical question, *can I forget! num oblīvīscī possum!* becomes in indirect discourse, *he says, can he forget? dīcit num oblīvīscī sē posse.* As an indirect question this would be *he asks whether he can forget, quaerit num oblīvīscī possit.*

**240.** A question in direct discourse is either real or rhetorical. If the mood used be subjunctive, the question is rhetorical and the subjunctive is retained in indirect discourse. If the mood in

the direct be the indicative, it is sometimes difficult to determine whether the question is real and to be expressed in indirect discourse by the subjunctive, or rhetorical and to be expressed by the infinitive. Often it depends merely on the writer's point of view.

## 241.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

*fidem facere.*

*gain credence.*

*alicui litterās ad aliquem dare.*

*to give some one a letter for  
some one.*

*amāns rei pūblicae.*

*patriotic, or a patriot.*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 2

The first five sentences are given in direct discourse. Translate them first as they are, then after *dicit*, then after *dixit*, making such changes in the persons of the verbs and pronouns as may be necessary.

242. 1. Don't cast Catiline out of the city. 2. <sup>1</sup>Why should I fear the remaining band of conspirators? 3. <sup>2</sup>Do you think that they will be helpless without him? 4. May my words gain greater credence in your ears. 5. <sup>3</sup>Can I send men to the Mulvian bridge without any one's suspicion? 6. He asked whether an attack was made on them. 7. He told them not to draw their swords. 8. I saw what they <sup>4</sup>were going to do. 9. I thought the opportunity was offered me <sup>5</sup>to give him a letter for Catiline. 10. They said that the prætors knew about the affair; why was it <sup>6</sup>kept from the others? 11. I told these patriotic youths <sup>7</sup>to undertake the business.

1. A rhetorical question with the subjunctive. 2. A real question. 3. A rhetorical question with the indicative. 4. First periphrastic. 5. Not infinitive. 6. Latin, "unknown by." 7. A command in indirect discourse.

## LESSON L

243. Declaratory Sentences — Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse. — Ref. 87. See also Table, sec. 231.

244.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

<i>integrīs signīs.</i>	<i>with seals unbroken.</i>
<i>praeter cōsuētūdinem.</i>	<i>contrary to custom.</i>
<i>ad senātum dēferre.</i>	<i>to lay before the senate.</i>
<i>tumultum cīvitatī inicere.</i>	<i>to cause an uproar in the state.</i>

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 3

Give the first five sentences first as they are, then after *dicit*, then after *dixit*.

245. 1. Whatsoever letters there are in that company will be surrendered with their seals unbroken. 2. Although I summoned Gabinius he suspected nothing. 3. Lentulus came after Cethegus had been summoned. 4. He was very tardy because he had been up late the night before, contrary to his custom. 5. While the senate was coming together, I sent a courageous man to the house of Cethegus. 6. He said that he would not open the letters before he had laid the matter before the senate. 7. He told him <sup>1</sup>to carry out the swords and daggers. 8. Too much diligence ought not to be feared. 9. He said, <sup>2</sup>should he rashly cause such an uproar in the state?

1. A command in indirect discourse. 2. A rhetorical question in indirect discourse.

## LESSON LI

246.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

<i>ex omnibus partibus.</i>	<i>on all sides.</i>
<i>fidēs pūblica.</i>	<i>the protection of the state.</i>
<i>quam primum.</i>	<i>as soon as possible.</i>

## FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 4

247. Volturcius, who had a letter for Catiline, at first, because of fear, refused to tell what he knew. Then, when I had given him the protection of the state, he said that the orders of Lentulus were for Catiline to approach the city with an army as soon as possible so as to unite with the leaders in the city. The Gauls, too, had letters, not only from Lentulus but also from the others, <sup>1</sup>urging them to send cavalry into Italy; Lentulus moreover had assured them that, according to the Sibylline fates, this was the year fated for the destruction of the city; and that he was that third Cornelius to whom the sovereignty must of necessity come.

I. A relative clause.

## LESSON LII

## Conditions in Indirect Discourse

248. Conditional Sentences with the Indicative, or of the First Class, in Indirect Discourse. — Ref. 83, Part I sec. 273-275. See also Table, sec. 231.

249.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

*nē longum sit.*

*not to make a long story of it.*

*abictus cōscientiā.*

*convicted by conscience.*

*in eandem sententiam.*

*to the same purport.*

*ad extrēmum.*

*at last.*

*facere potestātem.*

*to give an opportunity.*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 5

Translate the first three sentences first as they are, then after *dicit*, then after *dixit*.

250. 1. If I show<sup>1</sup> the tablets to Cethegus, he will recognize the seal. 2. If this is the letter to the senate of the

Allobroges, let us cut the string and read (it). 3. If this is the portrait of your grandfather, it ought to call you back from so great a crime. 4. If the letter of Statilius is to the same purport, <sup>2</sup>he will have to confess. 5. If, contrary to the general<sup>3</sup> expectation, he confessed, he was convicted by his conscience. 6. You know that if he asks the Gauls why they came to his house, they <sup>4</sup>will give consistent replies. 7. What will you reply, if I shall ask about the Sibylline fates? 8. Not to make a long story of it, he said that he would accept the aid of all, if it should be necessary. 9. I think that, even if he begins to reply impudently, he will at last deny nothing. 10. If he wishes to say anything about these matters, I will give him an opportunity.

1. Not present. 2. Second periphrastic impersonal. 3. Latin, "of all." 4. Latin, "will reply consistently."

### LESSON LIII

**251.** Conditional Sentences with the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, or of the Second Class, in Indirect Discourse. — Ref. 84. See also Table, sec. 231.

#### 252.

#### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

<i>summa rēs pūblica.</i>	<i>the supreme welfare of the state.</i>
<i>grātiās agere.</i>	<i>to thank.</i>
<i>post urbem conditam.</i>	<i>since the founding of the city.</i>
<i>magistrātū sē. abdicāre.</i>	<i>to resign an office.</i>

### FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 6

Translate the first three sentences first as they are, then after *dicit*, then after *dixit*.

**253.** 1. If the chief men should give their opinions, the senate would adopt them without any change. 2. If I should save the citizens from slaughter, the senate would



thank me<sup>1</sup> in most generous terms. 3. If Lentulus should ask the advice of the senate, they would urge him<sup>2</sup> to resign the prætorship. 4. If I avail myself of the faithful service of the prætors, I shall be praised. 5. If nine men out of this great number are placed in custody, the remainder can be restored. 6. Cicero says that if Lentulus resigns his office the state will have no scruples<sup>3</sup> in punishing him. 7. If<sup>4</sup> the affairs of the state are well conducted, a day of thanks will be decreed in your name. 8. Cicero says that he was the first civilian<sup>5</sup> to whom this had happened since the founding of the city. 9. I know that if Ceparius incites the shepherds of Apulia the supreme welfare of the state will be in the greatest danger.

1. ipsi in indir. disc. 2. Not infin. 3. quō minus, etc. 4. rēs pūblica. 5. togātus. Observe that the Latin and English idioms in this sentence are not at all alike.

## LESSON LIV

254. Conditional Sentences with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive, or of the Third Class, in Indirect Discourse. — Ref. 85, Part I sec. 282, 283. See also Table, sec. 231.

255. Remember that the regular change of the imperfect subjunctive in the apodosis of a condition contrary to fact is to the future participle in -ūrus with fuisse. The change to the future infinitive, mentioned by some grammarians, is very rare.

256.

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

moenibus continēre.

*to shut within the walls.*

cōnsiliō occurrere.

*to oppose a plan.*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 7

Translate the first three sentences first as they are, then after dicit, then after dixit.

257. 1. If we had captured the leaders of the war, all Catiline's hopes would have been dashed to the ground.

2. If Catiline were removed, I should not fear the furious rashness of Cethegus. 3. If he were not shut within the walls of the city, he would not <sup>1</sup>need to be feared by us. 4. If his hand or his tongue had failed him, he would not have dared to make such <sup>2</sup>a conspiracy against the state. 5. If this crafty man <sup>3</sup>had been present, he would not have selected the Saturnalia for our destruction. 6. Cicero says that if Catiline had remained in the city he would have opposed his (Catiline's) plans. 7. I know that if that enemy had not been found out, we should have had to fight with him. 8. He said that if these matters had not been carried on <sup>4</sup>in this way, we could never have freed the commonwealth from such perils.

1. What mood might be used? Cf. sec. 204. 2. Latin, "so great."  
3. *adesse*. 4. *sic*.

## LESSON LV

258.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

ut illa omittam.

*to omit the following.*

memoriā tenēre.

*to remember.*

signum collocandum locāre.

*to let a contract for setting up  
a statue.*

## FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 8

259. You surely remember that at the time when the gilded statue of Romulus was struck by lightning the soothsayers, who had assembled from all Etruria, said that unless the gods should be appeased in every way, civil war and the downfall of the city were impending. And so, to omit <sup>1</sup>all the other things which were done at that time to appease the gods, you remember that the consuls of that year let a contract for setting up a larger statue of Jove; for the soothsayers had said that they hoped that if that statue

should be made and should <sup>2</sup>face the east, the immortal gods would by their <sup>3</sup>divine power move the very fates.

1. *cētera*. 2. Latin, "look towards," *spectāre ad*. 3. One word in Latin.

## LESSON LVI

260. Passive Apodoses in Indirect Discourse. — Ref. 86, Part I sec. 289. See also Table, sec. 231.

261.

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

*mente captus*.

*demented, insane.*

*aliquid alicui crēdere*.

*to intrust something to some one.*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 9

Translate the first three sentences first as they are, then after *dicit*, then after *dixit*.

262. 1. If any one should deny that this city is governed by the power of the immortal gods, he would be insane. 2. If Roman citizens had planned the destruction of the commonwealth, it would have seemed incredible to some. 3. If the statue should be set up to-day, it would seem to have been done by the will of Jupiter. 4. If I were to say that I (successfully) opposed these men, I should take too much upon myself. 5. Lentulus will not intrust such important matters to Gauls. 6. I think that if prudence had not been taken away from their audacity, the letters would never have been intrusted to those barbarians. 7. If the conspirators had not been led through the Forum that day, the statue would not have been set up. 8. He said that if the Gauls should prefer the safety of the Romans to their own advantage, it would seem <sup>1</sup>an act of providence.

1. *divinitus factum*.

## LESSON LVII

263. Implied or Informal Indirect Discourse. — Ref. 88, Part I sec. 293.

264. Subjunctive of Integral Part or Attraction. — Ref. 127.

265. The constructions of Informal Indirect Discourse and Integral Part are so similar that it is often difficult to discriminate between them.

## 266. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

nē dicere quidem opus est.	<i>it is unnecessary even to mention.</i>
in hostium numerō dūcī.	<i>to be counted among the enemy.</i>

## • FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTERS 10–11

267. 1. The consul commanded the citizens to celebrate those days which had been appointed <sup>1</sup>for thanksgiving. 2. A thanksgiving was decreed <sup>2</sup>because Cicero had saved the city and the citizens from most cruel destruction. 3. Cicero wished the citizens to recall all the civil disturbances which they had heard about or seen. 4. Lentulus threatened <sup>3</sup>death to all who could be safe while the city was safe. 5. The conspirators passed a law concerning all who wished this city to flourish. 6. Marius in part killed, and in part drove from the city, those <sup>4</sup>who disagreed with <sup>5</sup>him. 7. The conspirators <sup>6</sup>hoped for such a war as no barbarous land had ever waged with its own people. 8. Do you know who it was that counted all of us among the enemy? 9. Those chiefs did not desire to destroy the commonwealth, but to change the one that then was. 10. It is unnecessary even to mention the disturbances which were settled by the slaughter of citizens.

1. Use *causā* with the genitive. 2. The language of the decree. It is to be noted that the subjunctive in a causal clause with *quod* depends

on the principle of implied indirect discourse. Cf. sec. 163. 3. Here the indirect discourse is implied in the phrase *threatened death*, which is equivalent to *said that he would kill*. 4. As a statement of fact, indicative; but if it means *who (as he suspected)*, subjunctive. 5. Latin, "from." 6. *spērāre*.

## LESSON LVIII

268. Review the Rules of Syntax, Lessons XLVIII–LVII.

269. Review the following idioms and phrases:—

abiectus cōscientiā.	magistrātū sē abdicāre.
ad extrēmum.	memoriā tenēre.
ad senātum dēferre.	mente captus.
alicui litterās ad aliquem dare.	moenibus continēre.
aliquid alicui crēdere.	nē dicere quidem opus est.
amāns rei pūblicae.	nē longum sit.
cōsiliō occurrere.	paucīs ante diēbus.
ex omnibus partibus.	post urbem conditam.
facere potestātem.	praeter cōsuētūdinem.
fidem facere.	quam primum.
fidēs pūblica.	sīgnum collocandum locāre.
grātiās agere.	summa rēs pūblica.
in eandem sententiam.	urbem condere.
in hostium numerō dūcī.	ut illa omittam.
integrīs signīs.	vīta omnium vestrum.

## FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 12

270. Cicero in his third oration against Catiline, delivered before the people on the third of December, said that since he could not, <sup>1</sup>like a victorious general, leave behind those whom he had conquered, but must live with them and die with them, the citizens, for whose safety he had exposed himself to hatred and perils, ought to see to it that the wicked should have no power to do him harm. <sup>2</sup>He added

further that <sup>3</sup>there was nothing higher, either in office or in fame, <sup>4</sup>to which he would like to climb; but that as <sup>5</sup>a private citizen <sup>6</sup>it was his purpose so to live as to <sup>7</sup>add honor to the deeds which he had performed in his consulship.

1. Latin "in the manner of," *mōre* with gen. 2. *etiam* addidit.

3. Latin, "neither in office nor in fame was there anything higher."

4. Latin, "whither." 5. Cf. sec. 7. 6. Latin, "it was to him in mind."

7. *ōrnāre*.

## CATILINE IV

### IV. ENGLISH AUXILIARY VERBS

271. The proper translation of the English auxiliary verbs *may*, *can*, *must*, *might*, *could*, *would*, *should*, presents many difficulties. These arise mainly from the fact that in English these verbs sometimes have their original and literal value, when they must be rendered by independent verbs, and sometimes the force of potential auxiliaries which may be expressed by the Latin subjunctive. The ambiguity of the English often leaves the interpretation open to the individual judgment of the translator. The six lessons based on this oration will be devoted to a practical consideration of some of the most important phases of this subject.

### LESSON LIX

#### may

#### might

272. *May* and *might* are common auxiliaries in the translation of some of the subordinate subjunctive constructions,\* as, for example, in purpose clauses :—

*Catiline remained that he might kill the consul, Catilīna mānsit ut cōsulem interficeret.*

273. When *may* and *might* express mere possibility they are translated by the Latin potential subjunctive :—

*You may sooner find fortune than keep it, fortūnam citius reperiās quam retineās.*

*You might have seen them fighting, vidērēs eōs pūgnantīs.*

\* The beginner is apt to make the mistake of supposing that a modal auxiliary must *always* be used in translating a subjunctive; but see Part I sec. 77.

*a.* Occasionally *might* conveys a stronger idea of capability or power and is to be translated by a past tense of *possum* : —

*They might have come, potuērunt venīre.*

**274.** When *may* expresses a wish, it is rendered by the optative subjunctive : —

*May the citizens be secure from harm, cīvēs sint incolumēs.*

**275.** When *may* and *might* express permission they should be translated by a form of *licet*,\* *it is permitted*.

The constructions with *licet* are as follows : —

<i>I may go</i> {	licet eam (lit. <i>it is permitted (that) I go</i> ), subjunctive with <i>ut</i> omitted (cf. sec. 142. <i>a</i> ).
	licet mē ire (lit. <i>it is permitted me to go</i> ), infinitive with subject accusative.
	licet ire (lit. <i>it is permitted to go</i> ), infinitive without subject accusative.
	licet mihi ire (lit. <i>to go is permitted to me</i> ), infinitive as subject, dative indirect object.

**276.** English expressions of obligation or possibility like *I ought to have done, I could have done, I might have done*, etc. are regularly expressed in Latin by a past tense of the auxiliary and the present infinitive : —

*He could (or might) have done this, hōc facere potuit* (lit. *he was able to do this*).

*I might have done this, hōc facere mē licuit* (lit. *it was permitted me to do this*).

## 277.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

*per deōs immortalīs.*

*by the immortal gods, in heaven's name.*

*vestra omnium caedēs.*

*the slaughter of all of you.*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTERS I AND 2

**278. 1.** You might have seen the eyes of all turned towards the consul. **2.** I may be forgetful of my own

\* Do not forget the use of *licet* as a concessive conjunction, cf. sec. 221, 224.



safety, but I will never forget<sup>1</sup> the honor and safety of the Roman people. 3. The orator said that the eyes of all were turned upon him. 4. May your house always be free from the danger of death. 5. Léntulus may think that his name is <sup>2</sup>destined by fate for the slaughter of all of you, but the gods are taking counsel for you. 6. Why, in heaven's name, do you wish to spare me, and why are you anxious about me? 7. May the gods save Italy from war and devastation. 8. May we not even lament the calamity of so great a city? 9. Catiline remained at Rome in order that we all might perish. 10. Gracchus was not permitted to be tribune of the people a second time. 11. <sup>3</sup>Some one may ask why Cicero was not moved by the tears of his friends.

1. See Ref. 70. 2. "destined by fate," one word in Latin. 3. *quispiam*.

## LESSON LX

can

could

279. When *can* and *could* express mere possibility and have the force of weak auxiliaries, they may be translated by the potential subjunctive:—

*I can establish this without any doubt, hōc sine ūllā dubitātiōne cōfirmem.*

280. More usually *can* and *could*, even when unemphatic, are expressed by the forms of *possum*.

*Cicero could have killed Catiline, Cicerō Catilinā interficere potuit.*

281.

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

nūllō pactō. }  
nūllō modō. }

*in no way.*

pūctum temporis frui vitā.

*to enjoy life for a moment.*

apud inferōs.

*in the lower world.*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTERS 3 AND 4

282. 1. Lentulus may resign his prætorship, but the senate can in no way compel him to confess. 2. The senate thanked the consul in unusual terms. 3. <sup>1</sup>You might have seen long since that new evils are rife in the commonwealth. 4. Do you see what you must decide before night? 5. There were some who thought<sup>2</sup> that the conspirators should be punished with death. 6. "There has been <sup>3</sup>no civilian before me," said Cicero, "in whose name a thanksgiving <sup>2</sup>has been decreed." 7. There are some who think that wicked citizens ought not to enjoy life for a moment. 8. If they can<sup>4</sup> blot out the name of the Roman people, they will. 9. Cicero says that if the punishments in the lower world are removed, the wicked <sup>5</sup>will not fear even death itself. 10. He could have taken away not only hope, but also life. 11. What alone can comfort a man in sorrow? Is it not hope?

1. Observe the ambiguity of *you might have seen*. If it is a mere potential idea, we use the potential subjunctive (*vidērēs*); if *might* expresses a stronger idea of power, we use a past tense of *possum*; if *permission* is intended, we use a past tense of *licet*. Let each interpret according to his own judgment (cf. sec. 271). 2. See Ref. 36. 3. Latin, "no one a civilian." 4. Future. 5. Use *fore ut*. See sec. 235.

## LESSON LXI

## 283.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

meā videō quid intersit.	<i>I see what is to my advantage.</i>
amplius negōtī.	<i>more trouble.</i>
nōn nēmō.	<i>one or two, somebody.</i>
nūdius tertius.	<i>day before yesterday.</i>
aliquem sententiam rogāre.	<i>to ask some one his opinion.</i>
sententiam ferre. }	<i>to express one's opinion, to vote,</i>
sententiam dicere. }	
supplicium dē aliquō sūmere.	<i>to inflict punishment on some one.</i>

## FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — CHAPTERS 5 AND 6

284. When Cicero was asked his opinion he saw what was to his advantage and that more trouble would be in store for him if he should not follow the opinion of Cæsar. However, when he <sup>1</sup>saw in imagination the city, the light of the whole world, falling in ruins, the unburied heaps of dead, the distress of the women and children, and Lentulus and Catiline holding sway, he showed himself stern and severe against those who wished to accomplish these things and said that no one could be truly regarded as a friend of the people who was unwilling to inflict the severest punishment on a public enemy. Some one may say that he was cruel, but I think that he expressed this opinion in order that he might not seem remiss to the fatherland.

1. Latin, "placed before himself."

## LESSON LXII

should

would

285. *Should* and *would* are generally potential auxiliaries and as such are adequately expressed by the Latin subjunctive. They appear very frequently in the English for the Latin potential subjunctive and in conditions:—

*Dīcam haec esse vĕra, I should say that this is true.*

*Haec sī tĕcum patria loquātur, nōne impetrāre dēbeat, if your country should thus speak with you, ought she not to prevail?*

*Quod sī quis petat, recūsem, if any one should ask for this, I would refuse.*

a. Less frequently *should* and *would* are to be expressed by a past tense of the first periphrastic:—

*What would have been (i.e. was about to be) the result? quid futūrum fuit?*

286. *Should* sometimes expresses obligation or duty, as in *a good citizen should love his country*. It is then rendered in some one of the ways mentioned in sec. 291.

287. When *would* expresses a wish it is rendered by the optative subjunctive :—

*Would that Clodius were now alive*, *utinam Clōdius vīveret*.

288. *Would* is the past of *will* or *wish*. It sometimes has this literal sense and must then be translated by a past tense of *volō* :—

*He would do it* (i.e. *he wished to do it*) *in spite of me*, *hōc facere voluit, mē invītō*.

*I would if I could*, *vellem sī possem* (lit. *I would wish, if I were able*).

## 289. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

*hodiernus diēs*.

*this day*.

*dē amōre rei pūblicae certāre*.

*to vie in patriotism*.

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTER 7

290. 1. There were some who feared that Cicero could not carry out the decrees of the senate. 2. <sup>1</sup>You might have known that all things were ready. 3. May these measures be carried out to-day? 4. These men should be regarded in the number of the enemy. 5. If all should think one and the same thing, the commonwealth would be preserved. 6. Why should I mention here the zeal of the common people? 7. May they vie with you in patriotism. 8. This day, for the first time since the founding of the city, men of all ranks have come together. 9. No civil strife<sup>2</sup> can hereafter come to any part of the commonwealth. 10. Would that they had been willing to perish alone rather than with many. 11. Who is there to whom the soil of his fatherland is not dear? 12. What other cause<sup>3</sup> could have recalled you from the dissensions of former<sup>4</sup> years?

1. Cf. sec. 282, N. 1. 2. Latin, "evil." 3. See sec. 276. 4. prior.

## LESSON LXIII

mustought

291. The ideas represented by *must*, *ought*, *there is need*, *it is necessary*, and the like, may all be expressed in a general way by the Latin second periphrastic conjugation, as—

*Cæsar had to do everything at the same time*, *Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda.*

When, however, the writer wishes to discriminate between these ideas, he may use one of the following:—

*a. oportet*, to lay stress upon the fitness, justice, and wisdom of the action.

*I* { *must*  
 { *ought to* } *obey my father*, *oportet* { *mē patrī pārēre.*  
 { *patrī pārēam* (cf. sec. 142. *a*).

*b. necesse est*, to express what is inevitable.

*Man must die*, *necesse est* { *hominem morī.*  
 { *hominī morī.*  
 { *homō moriātur* (cf. sec. 142. *a*).

*c. opus est*,\* to express a lack or a need of some kind.

*This wound ought to be washed with water*, *opus est hōc volnus aquā lavārī.*

*d. dēbēre*, to express a moral obligation or duty.

*Citizens ought to fight for the fatherland*, *cīvēs prō patriā pūgnāre dēbent.*

## 292.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

*operæ pretium est.*

*it is worth while.*

*summō locō nātī.*

*born in the highest station.*

*officiō cōsulārī fungī.*

*to perform the duty of consul.*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTERS 8 AND 9

293. 1. Those, indeed, who were born here in the highest station ought to judge this to be their fatherland. 2. What,

\* For the construction of *opus est* with nouns, see sec. 105.

pray, <sup>1</sup>would have happened if the shops had been burned?  
 3. It is worth while to hear what that tool of Lentulus is attempting. 4. This must be said, that there is no slave who does not desire the city to stand. 5. The Roman people ought to see to it that armed forces be not lacking. 6. All ranks should agree in preserving the commonwealth. 7. You must decide to-day concerning the fortunes of all. 8. The fatherland ought not to be beset by the weapons of a wicked conspiracy. 9. Catiline, you must not destroy the temples and shrines of the gods. 10. This thing ought not even to be thought about by citizens. 11. No one could excel Cicero in zeal: he would <sup>2</sup>perform his consular duty. 12. The senate <sup>3</sup>ought to have been aroused by the consul's voice.

1. See sec. 204. 2; 285. *a.* 2. See sec. 288. 3. See sec. 276.

## LESSON LXIV

294. Review the Grammatical Notes, Lessons LIX–LXIII.

295. Review the following idioms and phrases: —

<i>aliquem sententiam rogāre.</i>	<i>officiō cōsulārī fungī.</i>
<i>amplius negōtī.</i>	<i>operae pretium est.</i>
<i>apud inferōs.</i>	<i>per deōs immortālīs.</i>
<i>dē amōre rei pūblicae certāre.</i>	<i>pūctum temporis fruī vitā.</i>
<i>hodiernus diēs.</i>	<i>sententiam ferre — sententiam</i>
<i>meā videō quid intersit.</i>	<i>dīcere.</i>
<i>nōn nēmō.</i>	<i>summō locō nātī.</i>
<i>nūdius tertius.</i>	<i>supplicium dē aliquō sūmere.</i>
<i>nullō pactō — nullō modō.</i>	<i>vestra omnium caedēs.</i>

FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — CHAPTERS 10 AND 11

296. Although Cicero saw that he had undertaken a never-ending conflict with wicked citizens, yet he said that he would never repent of his deeds and designs. And in lieu of the

triumph and the other marks of praise which he might have had, he demanded <sup>1</sup>no other reward than the everlasting memory of his consulship. Since this is so, we ought to give some place to this illustrious Roman among the praises of distinguished men. Some one may mention <sup>2</sup>Scipio, Paulus, and Marius; but we can not deny that Cicero saved the commonwealth at a time of great peril, and he who opens new territories <sup>3</sup>ought not to be praised more than he who sees to it that those who are absent may have a place whither they can return.

1. Latin, "nothing except." 2. *commemorāre*. 3. Latin, "provinces."

# THE ARCHIAS

## V. PREPOSITIONS

NOTE. — The following six lessons are devoted to the rendering of some of the more troublesome English prepositions. The Latin and English idioms differ nowhere, perhaps, so much as here; and nowhere is greater care necessary.

### LESSON LXV

about

after

against

among

297. about in the sense of *concerning* is rendered by *dē* and the ablative: —

*The ambassadors spoke about peace, lēgātī dē pāce dīxērunt.*

about referring to *time* is rendered as follows: —

about meaning *in the neighborhood of* (but somewhat removed) by *circā* or *circiter* with the accusative.

about meaning *towards, getting close to*, by *sub* (sometimes *ad*) with the accusative.

about meaning *during, taking out a part, before the end of*, by *dē* with the ablative.

Compare the three expressions *circā secundam hōram* — *sub noctem* — *dē tertiā vigiliā*.

298. after is generally rendered by *post* with the accusative.

after of *immediate* succession is rendered by *ē* or *ex* with the ablative: —

*Immediately after his consulship he set out, ex cōsulātū profectus est.*



after meaning *coming close to, near to*, is rendered by *ad* with the accusative :—

*After the manner of beasts, ad modum bēstiārum.*

299. against, when preceded by a verb of motion, is usually rendered by *in* and the accusative, and emphasizes the direction taken by the action :—

*Cæsar set out against the Gauls, Caesar in Gallōs est profectus.*

against meaning *contrary to, in opposition to*, is rendered by *contrā* with the accusative and emphasizes the idea of hostility.

Before names of persons we find either *in* or *contrā* according to the idea to be conveyed. With *in* the person is the object of a feeling or act that may be either friendly or unfriendly, but *contrā* is used only of the latter.

300. among of nations and large companies is rendered by *apud* with the accusative, as *apud Helvētiōs, among the Helvetians.*

among after words like *conspicuous, famous*, and the like, is rendered by *inter* with the accusative :—

*Who was the most famous among the Roman orators?*

*Quis erat inter orātōrēs Rōmānōs clārissimus?*

among meaning *in the number of* is rendered by *in* with the ablative :—

*I reckon him among my friends, in meis amicīs eum habeo.*

among after verbs of motion is often rendered by *in* or *inter* and the accusative :—

*He divided the army among the states, exercitum in cīvitatīs divisit.*

### 301.

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

exercitātiō dicendī.

optimārum artium studia.

in primīs.

ratiō studiōrum.

*practice in speaking.*

*the pursuit of the liberal arts.*

*among the first.*

*a course of study.*

rem agere.	<i>to conduct a case.</i>
utī prope novō quōdam genere dicendī.	<i>to use an almost new manner of pleading.</i>

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTERS I AND 2

**302.** 1. In his oration for the poet Archias, Cicero says many things about the pursuit of the liberal arts. 2. He conducted the case before the prætor. 3. Many among the Romans devoted themselves to the pursuit of culture. 4. Among Roman orators Cicero was the most distinguished. 5. In this oration the orator did not speak after the custom of the courts, but used an almost new manner of pleading. 6. I ask you whether we among the first ought not to bring aid to Archias. 7. When Archias came to Rome, Cicero was about four years old.<sup>1</sup> 8. <sup>2</sup>Why should I not speak a little more freely before this concourse of educated men? 9. It seems wonderful that <sup>3</sup>any one was willing to speak against the poet. 10. After the Punic wars the Romans became<sup>4</sup> desirous of entering upon these courses of study. 11. If Archias were not a citizen, he ought to be added. 12. All the arts are of this nature, that they are bound together by a kind of relationship.

1. Remember the idiomatic use of *nātus*. 2. Rhetorical question.  
3. *quisquam*. 4. *fierī*.

## LESSON LXVI

before                  by                  for                  from

**303.** before is generally rendered by *ante* with the accusative after verbs of both rest and motion. Finer shades of meaning are expressed as follows:—

*prae* with the ablative is used after verbs of motion in the sense of *directly in front of*, so especially in the phrase *prae sē*:—

*He carried a dagger before him, sīcam prae sē tulit.*

**prō** with the ablative is used to denote *rest in front of*:—

*They were on guard before the gate, prō portis in statione erant.*

**ob** with the accusative is used to denote motion *to meet, to the face of*:—

*Death presents itself before our eyes, mors ob oculōs versatur.*

**apud** (more rarely **ad**) with the accusative denotes *in the presence of* a large body of people, as **apud senātum**, *before the senate*.

**cōram** with the ablative denotes *in the presence of* an individual, as **cōram Ariovistō**, *before Ariovistus*. **apud**, however, is often used of presence before an official, as **apud praetōrem**, *before the praetor*.

**304. by** denoting agency is expressed by **ā** or **ab** with the ablative.

**by** denoting *means* is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

**by** denoting the *route* or the *way by which* is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

**by** denoting the *medium through which* is expressed by **per** with the accusative (cf. sec. 103):—

*Cæsar was informed by letter and by scouts, Caesar per litterās et explorātōrēs certior factus est.*

**by** denoting *nearness* to a *person* is expressed by **apud** with the accusative, to a *place* by **ad** or **prope** with the accusative:—

*I was sitting by Cicero, apud Cicerōnem sedēbam.*

*I have a villa by the Tiber, villam ad Tiberim habeo.*

**by** in oaths and adjurations is expressed by **per** with the accusative, as *by the gods*, **per deōs**.

**305. for** is often expressed in Latin by the case-constructions without a preposition:—

Case-constructions often translated by <i>for</i>	{	Objective Genitive with Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs.
		Dative of Purpose or End.
		Dative with Adjectives.
		Accusative of Duration of Time and Extent of Space.
		Ablative or Genitive of Price or Value.
		Ablative of Cause.

*for* meaning *instead of*, *in behalf of*, or *for the sake of*, is expressed by *prō* with the ablative.

*for* denoting *motion towards* is expressed by the accusative with or without a preposition:—

*He set out for Rome*, *Rōmam profectus est.*

*He set out for the province*, *ad prōvinciam profectus est.*

*for* of a preventing cause is expressed by *prae* with the ablative:—

*I can not speak for tears*, *prae lacrimis dicere nōn possum.*

*for* denoting *emphatic cause* may be expressed by *ob*, *propter*, or *dē* with their respective cases.

*for* sometimes introduces a purpose construction.

**306.** from is often rendered in Latin by the bare ablative, much more rarely by the dative (see Ref. 54). Prepositions are employed as follows:—

*from* meaning *away from*, of literal and emphatic separation, is expressed by *ā* or *ab* and the ablative.

*from* meaning *down from* is expressed by *dē* with the ablative.

*from* meaning *out of* is expressed by the ablative with *ē* or *ex*.

### 307.

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

*ut primum.*

*as soon as.*

*omnibus antecellere.*

*to excel all.*

*cōgnitiōne dignus.*

*worthy of acquaintance.*

*rēs ad scribendum.*

*subjects for writing.*

*aequissimō iūre ac foedere civitās.*

*a state with most favorable treaty rights.*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTERS 3 AND 4

308. 1. Cicero says that Archias devoted himself to the pursuit of writing as soon as he emerged from boyhood. 2. At Antioch, once a famous city, he quickly excelled all. 3. The report of his talent was <sup>1</sup>noised abroad before his arrival in Latium. 4. I think that he set out for Italy from Asia by sea. 5. After his arrival all who were worthy of acquaintance were anxious to hear him. 6. One of the consuls was Marius, of whom it is truly said that he could furnish subjects for writing. 7. Heraclea is a Greek city by the sea. 8. After citizenship at Heraclea was given (to him) he wished to be enrolled at Rome. 9. For this reason he made public profession before his good friend Quintus Metellus. 10. I think that Lucullus had great influence among the Heracleans. 11. I hear that ambassadors have come with evidence for Archias. 12. By these ambassadors the Heracleans showed<sup>2</sup> that he had been enrolled. 13. I do not deny that that state enjoyed the most favorable treaty rights.

1. Translate by one word. 2. *dēmōnstrāre*.

## LESSON LXVII

309.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

*tabulārum fidem resīgnāre.*

*to destroy confidence in documents.*

*iūs cīvitatīs.*

*the right of citizenship.*

*sē gerere prō cīve.*

*to deport one's self as a citizen.*

*ōrātiō et facultās.*

*power of eloquence.*

*mē quid pudeat?*

*why should I be ashamed?*

*parvī dūcere.*

*to consider of small value.*

## FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION—CHAPTERS 5 AND 6

**310.** What is there that can destroy confidence in the tablets of Metellus, by which the poet's right of citizenship has been established? Of course you will ask for our <sup>1</sup>census rolls, <sup>2</sup>just as if you did not know that Archias went to Asia with Lucullus; but since Archias was already then deporting himself as a citizen, there is no doubt that he would have been enrolled had he been in Italy at that time. But, Grattius, perchance<sup>3</sup> you consider this poet of small importance and you wonder because I am so delighted with him. Yet why should I be ashamed to confess that I devote as much of my leisure as I can to the pursuit of the very<sup>4</sup> arts which Archias cultivates? For from these my power of eloquence springs, and from this fountain I have drawn the precepts of the wise from my youth up.

1. Translate by one word. 2. See Ref. 42. 3. forte. 4. ipse.

## LESSON LXVIII

inofon

**311.** in is generally rendered by Latin *in*. It is often not expressed — as with the ablative of specification, before locatives and names of towns, before *locō*, *modō*, *silentiō*, *aestāte*, *hieme*, and before nouns modified by *tōtus*.

*in* denoting manner, if expressed at all, is translated by *cum* (see sec. 112).

*in* with the added notion of *taking a part of*, before the completion of, is expressed by *dē* with the ablative, as *late in the night*, *multā dē nocte*.

*in* referring to an author's works is expressed by *apud* with the accusative, as *we read in Cicero*, *apud Cicerōnem legimus*.

For *in* in the sense of *in the presence of*, see sec. 303.

**312.** *of* is usually the sign of the genitive case.

*of* denoting *source* or *origin* is expressed by the ablative with or without *ē* (*ex*) or *ā* (*ab*). See Ref. 15.

*of* denoting *material* is expressed by the ablative, usually with *ē* (*ex*) or *dē*. See Ref. 15.

*of* denoting *characteristic* or *quality* is expressed by the genitive or ablative. See Ref. 13.

*of* denoting *cause* is expressed by the ablative (see Ref. 5), as *he died of hunger*, *famē periit*.

*of* often represents the 'partitive genitive, but see sec. 73, 74.

*of* meaning *selected from among* is rendered by *ē* (*ex*) with the ablative:—

*Of this number was Africanus*, *ex hōc numerō erat Āfricānus*.

*of* is often used in English where Latin uses an appositive, as *the city of Rome*, *urbs Rōma*.

For *of* in the sense of *about*, *concerning*, see sec. 297.

**313.** *on* after verbs of *motion* is generally rendered by *in* with the accusative, after verbs of *rest* by *in* with the ablative.

*on* in phrases of location like *on the right*, *on the rear*, etc. is rendered by *ā* (*ab*) with the ablative.

*on* denoting *time when* is usually expressed by the bare ablative, as *on the third day*, *tertiō diē*.

*on* in the sense of *upon* is usually expressed by *super*, with the accusative after verbs of motion and with the ablative after verbs of rest.

For *on* meaning *about*, *concerning*, see sec. 297.

### 314.

### IDIOMS AND PHRASES

*litteris prōdere.*

*to hand down in books.*

*ut opīnor.*

*as I think.*

*arte cōnstāre.*

*to depend upon art.*

*omni ratiōne.*

*in every way.*

*sē ad litterārum studium cōferre.*

*to devote one's self to the pursuit of learning.*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTERS 7 AND 8

315. 1. Not all of the most distinguished men have devoted themselves to the pursuit of learning. 2. There are some <sup>1</sup>who without education show themselves of excellent mind and character. 3. But there is no doubt that something remarkable appears when education has been added to unusual natural ability. 4. On this (subject) <sup>2</sup>one may read many things in Cicero. 5. In one passage<sup>3</sup> of the oration for Archias he says that the pursuit of letters ought to be cultivated in every way. 6. Cicero himself did not hesitate<sup>4</sup> to confess that poets were sacred. 7. "Some pursuits," <sup>5</sup>said he, "depend upon art, but poets are filled with a sort of divine inspiration." 8. The Romans thought that among the older writers Ennius was easily first in excellence. 9. His virtues have been handed down in books. 10. In those times Lælius and Cato were considered very learned. 11. No recreation of the mind, as I think, is more humanizing than the pursuit of letters. 12. One of the seven cities which claimed Homer as a citizen was Smyrna.

1. Ref. 36. 2. Latin, "it is permitted to read." 3. I.e. "place."  
4. dubitāre, cf. Part I sec. 167. 5. See sec. 232.

## LESSON LXIX

overtowith

316. over of *motion* or *rest above* is expressed by *super* with the accusative or ablative. In the latter sense *suprā* with the accusative may be used:—

*The eagle flies over the clouds, aquila super nūbīs volitat.*

*over* in the sense of *across* is expressed by *trāns* and the accusative, as *over the river, trāns flūmen.*



**over** meaning *more than* is best expressed by **amplius**, as *over twenty cities*, **amplius vīgintī urbēs**.

**over** meaning *throughout* or *during* is expressed by **per** and the accusative, as *over a period of ten years*, **per decem annōs**.

Where **over** denotes *superiority in authority*, it is generally represented by some compound verb; e.g. **præficere**, *to appoint over*.

**317. to** is often a sign of the dative, of the infinitive, or of a purpose clause.

**to** meaning *motion to* or *into* is expressed by **ad** or **in** with the accusative.

**to** meaning *extension of space to* is rendered by **usque ad** and the accusative or by **tenus\*** and the ablative:—

*He reigns to the mountains* { **ūsque ad montīs rēgnat.**  
**montibus tenus rēgnat.**

**to** meaning *extension of number to* is rendered by **ad** and the accusative:—

*The enemy were killed to a man*, **hostēs ad ūnum occīsī sunt**.

**to** meaning *extension of time to* is expressed by **ad** or **in** with the accusative, as *to the second hour*, **ad secundam hōram**.

**318. with** is often a part of a compound verb and is not to be rendered by a Latin preposition, as **reprehendere**, *to find fault with*; **assentīrī**, *to agree with*; **īrāscī**, *to be angry with*.

with reference to }  
 with regard to } are translated by **ad** or by **quod attinet ad**.  
 with respect to }

*With respect to Caesar, I have this to say*, **quod attinet ad Caesarem, haec dīcō**.

For further consideration of **with** see sec. 111, and Part I sec. 499.

\* **Tenus** follows its case.

## 319.

## IDIOMS AND PHRASES

in caelum tollere.

*to praise to the skies.*

āversus ā Mūsīs.

*indifferent to poetry.*

nostrī māiōrēs.

*our forefathers.*

dē vitā dimicāre.

*to fight at the risk of life.*

scrīptor rērum.

*a historian.*

## FOR ORAL TRANSLATION — CHAPTERS 9 AND 10

320. 1. Homer had few friends (while) living, but after his death seven cities claimed him. 2. Even Marius, who might have seemed indifferent to poetry, praised him to the skies. 3. With regard to that famous Themistocles, they say that <sup>1</sup>he loved to hear his virtues praised by poets. 4. Pontus is over the sea far from Italy. 5. Lucullus with a Roman army routed the forces of the Armenians. 6. A statue of marble was set on the tomb of the Scipios by our forefathers. 7. To the times of Cicero Latin was hemmed in by narrow boundaries. 8. Do you know how many historians Alexander the Great had with him? 9. What did he say when <sup>2</sup>he stood by the tomb of Achilles? 10. Lucullus drove the king from Pontus even to the extreme <sup>3</sup>limits of Armenia. 11. Those who fight for glory at the risk of life <sup>4</sup>are eager to have their exploits written about. 12. Over twenty-five ships of the enemy were sunk in that naval battle.

1. Follow the idiom of the text. 2. Latin *tum cum*, see sec. 184. A. 3. *ultimus*, -a, -um. 4. Latin, "desire that it be written concerning their affairs."

## LESSON LXX

321. Review the Grammatical Notes on the use of Prepositions, Lessons LXV-LXIX.

322. Review the idioms and phrases on the following page:—

aequissimō iūre ac foedere.  
 arte cōnstāre.  
 āversus ā Mūsīs.  
 cōgnitiōne dignus.  
 dē vitā dīmīcāre.  
 exercitātiō dīcendī.  
 in caelum tollere.  
 in primīs.  
 iūs cīvitātis.  
 litterīs prōdere.  
 mē quid pudeat?  
 nostrī māiōrēs.  
 omnī ratiōne.  
 omnibus antecellere.  
 optimārum artium studia.

ōrātiō et facultās.  
 parvī dūcere.  
 ratiō studiōrum.  
 rem agere.  
 rēs ad scribendum.  
 scriptor rērum.  
 sē ad litterārum studium cōn-  
 ferre.  
 sē gerere prō cīve.  
 tabulārum fidem resignāre.  
 ut opīnor.  
 ut primum.  
 ūtī prope novō quōdam genere  
 dīcendī.

#### FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION — CHAPTERS 11 AND 12

**323.** We can not hide this (fact), that all the best men, even the very philosophers who write pamphlets on the <sup>1</sup>worthlessness of fame, are influenced by the desire for praise. Many of our generals almost with arms in their hands have sought to perpetuate<sup>2</sup> the memory of their names by monuments and statues. Surely, if the mind did not look forward to the future and if we thought that all things would perish with ourselves, we should not torture ourselves with such anxieties and labors up to the last moment <sup>3</sup>of our lives. <sup>4</sup>Since then we are all so desirous<sup>5</sup> of immortality, we ought to preserve this poet who promises that he will spread abroad to the everlasting memory of the world the glorious exploits of the Roman people.

1. Latin, "the despising of glory." 2. prōdere. 3. Latin, "of life."  
 4. Latin, "on which account since." 5. cupidus, -a, -um.

## INDEX OF GRAMMATICAL NOTES

- Ablative Case.** Accompaniment with *cum* omitted, 106; after comparatives, 98; degree of difference, 97; difference between the ablative and genitive of quality, 72; estimation or value and price distinguished in construction, 110; manner, 112; person *by* and person *through*, 103; separation with or without a preposition, 94; time, 99; the *way by which*, 104; with *opus* and *usus*, 105; with verbs of plenty and want, 96.
- about*, how rendered, 297.
- Accusative Case.** Cognate accusative with intransitive verbs, 37; cognate accusative of a neuter pronoun or adjective, 38; Greek accusative, 45; two accusatives, 43, 44.
- Adjectives and adverbs distinguished, 17.
- Adjectives used for adverbs, 16.
- Adjectives with the genitive, 79.
- after*, how rendered, 298.
- against*, how rendered, 299.
- Agreement.** Relative with an appositive, 26; verb with a collective noun, 21; verb with two singular subjects, 22.
- aiō*, use of, 232.
- among*, how rendered, 300.
- Antecedent of relative incorporated, 27, 119.
- antequam* and *priusquam*, 189, 190.
- Appositive, agreement of verb with, rather than with subject, 4.
- Appositive used for a relative clause or for a clause of time or cause, 3.
- as* not expressed in Latin, 7.
- Attributive adjective, position of with two or more nouns, 11.
- before*, how rendered, 303.
- by*, translation of, 304.
- Can* — *could*, translation of, 279, 280.
- Causal conjunctions distinguished, 163–165.
- Cause expressed by a participle, 166.
- Characteristic, clauses of, 150.
- Clauses of limitation, 167. *a*.
- Collective nouns, agreement of verb with, 21.
- Comparisons made by *ut . . . ita*, 212, 213.
- Conditions.** Contrary to fact in indirect discourse, 255; contrary to fact with the indicative in the apodosis, 204; particular and general, 211.
- cum*, constructions with, 184.

**Dative Case.** Intransitive verbs with, 52; purpose or end for which, 63; *tibi librum dōnō* or *tē librō dōnō*, 54; ways of expressing possession, 58, 59; with adjectives, 64; with compounds, 53; with verbs of separation, 95.

*dear*, translation of in "Dear Sir," 33.  
*dicō*, use of, 232.

Emphatic cause, 113.

English auxiliaries, how translated, 271.

First periphrastic conjugation after *nōn dubitō quān* and in indirect questions, 134.

*for*, how rendered, 305.

*fore ut*, when used, 235.

*from*, how rendered, 306.

**Genitive Case.** Adjectives with, 79; distinction between genitive and ablative of quality, 72; partitive genitive, when not used, 73, 74; predicate genitive, 78; preposition with its object used for the objective genitive, 70; price with *tantī*, *quantī*, etc., 110; subjective genitive of pronouns, 71; with *miseret*, *paenitet*, etc., 84; with *rēfert* and *interest*, 85; with verbs of judicial action, 86; with verbs of plenty and want, 87; with verbs of remembering and forgetting, 80.

*in*, how rendered, 311.

**Indirect Discourse.** Table of constructions, 231; questions in,

239, 240; verbs of saying with, 232.

*inquam*, use of, 232.

Interrogatives, 116.

*licet*, constructions after, 275, 224.

Manner, how expressed, 112.

*may* — *might*, translation of, 272–276.

*must* — *ought*, translation of, 291.

*necesse est*, constructions after, 291. *b*.

*of*, how rendered, 312.

*on*, how rendered, 313.

*oportet*, constructions after, 291. *a*.

*opus* and *ūsus*, construction with, 105.

*ought*, translation of, 291.

*over*, how rendered, 316.

Position of attributive adjective with two or more nouns, 11.

Possession, ways of expressing, 58, 59.

*postquam*, use of, 180.

Prepositions, 297 ff.

Present infinitive with past verb of obligation or possibility, 276.

Price expressed by the genitive, 110.

*quamquam*, *quamvis*, 222, 223.

Questions in indirect discourse, 239, 240.

Questions, moods in, 118.

*quid est quod* and *quid quod*, 150. *a*.

*quān*, principal uses of, 158.

*quod*-clauses of fact, 171.

Relative adverbs with the subjunctive, 151.

Relative clauses, construction of, 167.

Relative pronoun agrees with an appositive, 26.

Relative pronoun, antecedent incorporated, 27.

Saying, verbs of, 232.

*senātus populusque Rōmānus* with a singular verb, 22. *c.*

*should—would*, translation of, 285–288.

Subjunctive of characteristic, 150.

Substantive clauses with *quod*, with *ut* or *nē*, and with the infinitive, 172.

*tamen* expressed in Latin when omitted in English, 225.

Temporal Clauses, 179; with *antequam* and *priusquam*, 189–190; with *postquam*, 180; with *cum*, 184.

Tense-sequence, 133, 135–138.

*the same as*, translation of, 214.

*to*, how rendered, 317.

*too* followed by an adjective and an infinitive, 149.

Transitive compound verbs, construction after, 39.

*ut* and *nē* after verbs of fearing, 144.

*ut*, omission of, 142; use of in short parenthetical clauses, 143.

Verbs of remembering and forgetting, constructions with, 80.

Verbs of saying — *dicō*, *aiō*, *inquam*, 232.

Vocative, position of, 32.

*with*, how rendered, 318.

*with* not always rendered by *cum*,

III.

*would*, translation of, 285–288.



PART III

EXERCISES FOR SENIOR REVIEW

BASED ON CICERO'S ORATIONS AND LETTERS





## EXERCISES FOR SENIOR REVIEW

N.B. The numerical references are to the Grammatical Summary, p. 181.

### EXERCISE I

*A. I.* <sup>97</sup> After the consuls had been elected, Cicero prayed to<sup>a</sup> the immortal gods <sup>118</sup> that this choice<sup>b</sup> might result favorably to the Roman people. 2. Murena and Silanus were declared consuls for<sup>c</sup> the next year. 3. It happened <sup>123</sup> that one of these consuls elect was accused of bribery.<sup>68</sup> 4. Cicero defended Murena's cause, <sup>a37</sup> although the accusers blamed him for undertaking the case. 5. There is no doubt <sup>124</sup> that the orator wished to repel <sup>c</sup> hostile attacks on the fame and fortunes of his friend. 6. Cicero, <sup>28</sup> while he was consul, had proposed a law concerning bribery, <sup>f</sup> and it had been enacted by the senate and ratified by the people. 7. <sup>34</sup> Since this was so, Cato and many others said <sup>87</sup> that it was not right for <sup>93</sup> Cicero to plead the cause. 8. This is that famous Cato who, <sup>137</sup> several years later, committed suicide <sup>101</sup> at Utica; and for this reason he is called Cato Uticensis. 9. It is <sup>63</sup> the duty of a good consul, not only to see <sup>120</sup> what is being done, but also to foresee <sup>120</sup> what is <sup>e</sup> likely to happen. 10. Cicero will say in defense that nothing has been done contrary to law.

*a.* Latin, "from." *b.* Latin, "thing." *c.* in with acc. *d.* Latin, "though the undertaking of the case was blamed by the accusers." *e.* Latin, "attacks of foes from." *f.* Latin, "which, enacted by the senate, the people had commanded to be ratified." *g.* The first periphrastic often has this force.

*B.* For many reasons, Cicero's orations against<sup>a</sup> Verres, in which he gives <sup>b</sup>a full account of the latter's shameful acts committed against the Sicilians, are <sup>125</sup>worth reading; for it must be confessed <sup>c</sup>that he was<sup>98</sup> the most corrupt proprætor that ever ruled over a province. These orations, moreover, show us not alone the evils by which the Roman state was affected at that time, but also the patriotism with which the distinguished orator was filled. And he took the part of prosecutor with <sup>9</sup>such zeal <sup>122</sup>that Verres <sup>d</sup>decided<sup>186</sup> to go into <sup>\*</sup>(voluntary) exile.

*a.* in. *b.* Latin, "in many words." *c.* Latin, "that he among all proprætors who have ever ruled over a province was the most corrupt." *d.* ille.

## EXERCISE II

*A.* 1. Sulpicius <sup>79</sup>was exceedingly vexed <sup>85</sup>because Cicero <sup>97</sup>had forgotten his friendship,<sup>70</sup> and was defending Murena against him.<sup>115</sup> 2. It is a <sup>a</sup>serious matter to be justly<sup>b</sup> accused in <sup>\*</sup>(a case of) friendship; and <sup>87</sup>even if you are falsely accused, <sup>99</sup>it ought not to be regarded lightly. 3. Murena was born of a distinguished and honorable plebeian family,<sup>15</sup> at Lanuvium,<sup>101</sup> a Roman <sup>c</sup>municipal town. 4. <sup>40</sup>If <sup>d</sup>my intimacy with you had caused me to withdraw from this case, the consul elect would (now) have no defender in that state in which our ancestors intended that <sup>e</sup>no one,<sup>47</sup> however low, should ever want<sup>92</sup> an advocate. 5. I should consider myself arrogant, gentlemen of the jury, <sup>40</sup>if <sup>f</sup>the consul had found me wanting. 6. I will deal with you, Sulpicius, <sup>g</sup>as if my brother, who is very dear to me, were <sup>42</sup>in your <sup>h</sup>place. 7. One part of the accusation, which is concerned with the life of Murena and which ought <sup>94</sup>to have been the most serious, is the most trifling.

<sup>\*</sup> Words in parenthesis are not to be translated.

8. Something has been said concerning Asia, but this province was desired<sup>1</sup> by him not for self-gratification, but <sup>117</sup>that he might serve as a soldier <sup>2</sup>under his father as general.

*a.* grave. *b.* Latin, "truly." *c.* See Part I sec. 29. *d.* Latin, "your intimacy had removed me from." *e.* Latin, "to no one, the lowest, an advocate should ever be wanting." *f.* Latin, "I had been wanting to the consul." *g.* Latin, "not otherwise than if." *h.* The demonstrative of the second person, see 110. *i.* Latin, "sought."

*B.* It will be easily perceived <sup>120</sup>what sort of a man you are, Verres, when you are found to have robbed not only "your enemies but even "your friends <sup>9</sup>in a most shameless manner. Most open and especially hospitable to you<sup>45</sup> was the house of Heius <sup>5</sup>of Messana, which, before your coming, was so splendidly furnished <sup>122</sup>that it was no more 'of an ornament to its owner than to the city. There was in the house a very ancient chapel in which were four statues <sup>18</sup>of marvelous beauty, the work of Greek artists; "and all these statues you took away. "I bought them," you say. But I ask <sup>12</sup>at how much Heius valued <sup>120</sup> them, and why he sold <sup>120</sup> them.

*a.* Latin, "among enemies," "among friends." *b.* In Latin express by the adjective, "belonging to Messana." *c.* Latin, "for an ornament to the master." *d.* Latin, "which all," cf. Part II sec. 27. *b.*

### EXERCISE III

*A.* 1. The Romans thought that dancing was<sup>87</sup> the lowest of all vices. 2. For this reason Cicero took it ill <sup>85</sup>that Cato had accused Murena of dancing.<sup>68</sup> 3. He said that Cato ought not thus rashly to accuse a consul of the Roman people against<sup>a</sup> whose conduct<sup>b</sup> nothing could<sup>87</sup> be shown. 4. The consul elect is worthy of defense<sup>8</sup> because he is a virtuous and upright man. 5. In dignity<sup>16</sup> of birth, integrity, and industry, they were equals; 'and, depending

on this honorable record, they sought the consulship. 6. At the time <sup>132</sup>when this case was tried, <sup>a</sup>scarcely any one of the common people knew <sup>86</sup> what <sup>e</sup> a difference there once was <sup>120</sup> between the patricians and plebeians. 7. The plebeians <sup>79</sup> had long since forgotten the dissension <sup>70</sup> which <sup>137</sup> many years before had driven them to the Aventine. 8. <sup>f</sup>On the other hand the Quirites always knew <sup>120</sup> whether or not <sup>e</sup> the candidates for the consulship <sup>h</sup> belonged to the nobility. <sup>68</sup> 9. There was no doubt <sup>124</sup> that both Sulpicius and Murena <sup>h</sup> belonged to this order.

*a.* in. *b.* Latin, "life." *c.* What case follows *frētus*? see Gram. The Latin says, "supported by which ornaments." *d.* Latin, "there was scarcely any one of the common people who." *e.* quantum. *f.* sed. *g.* Latin, "those seeking the consulship." *h.* Latin, "were of."

*B.* But <sup>117</sup> to return to those statues which Verres took from the chapel; <sup>87</sup> though they were all very beautiful, yet the one of Cupid, made of marble, <sup>15</sup> excelled all the others. <sup>47</sup> It was the work of Praxiteles, the same artist that made <sup>110</sup> that famous Cupid which was at Thespieae, <sup>101</sup> on account of which <sup>a</sup> people go to visit Thespieae, for there is no other reason <sup>71</sup> for going there. *C.* Claudius, the ædile, once used this Cupid <sup>17</sup> while he <sup>78</sup> was decorating the Forum; but he was careful afterwards <sup>73</sup> to send it back, and thanked the citizens of Messana for <sup>b</sup> their courtesy.

*a.* Latin, "Thespieae is visited, for there is no other cause for visiting (it)." *b.* ob.

#### EXERCISE IV

*A.* 1. The steps <sup>a</sup> towards the acquisition of the consulship would have been easier, <sup>41</sup> if your grandfather and father had been prætors. <sup>28</sup> 2. There are some <sup>86</sup> who are thought worthy of the highest dignity, <sup>8</sup> not because of <sup>b</sup> nobility of family, but because of their own virtue. 3. <sup>119</sup> Did not Pompey

hand down to posterity an honorable name which he did not receive from his ancestors? 4. Cicero says <sup>85</sup>that if want of nobility (of birth) 'had been an objection, approach to the consulship would not have been open even <sup>115</sup>to himself. 5. He was the first new man <sup>36</sup>by whom <sup>4</sup>the barriers of the nobility were broken down. 6. 'It was his fortune <sup>123</sup>to seek this office <sup>3</sup>together with two patricians, Catiline and Galba; but he surpassed <sup>32</sup>the one in worth and the other in popularity. 7. <sup>75</sup>Let us leave off talking about birth, and let us 'look into the other points. 8. <sup>43</sup>If you enter upon a magistracy, <sup>99</sup>you must live at the will of others and not according to your own (desire). 9. <sup>84</sup>Since you have fought battles, routed the enemy, and taken several cities, <sup>82</sup>some by storm, <sup>7</sup>others by siege, <sup>8</sup>it must needs be <sup>128</sup>that you are skilled in military affairs.<sup>57</sup>

*a.* Singular in Latin, and followed by the genitive gerundive construction. *b.* Express "nobility of family" by one word. *c.* Latin, "had been objected." *d.* Latin, "it happened to him that." *e.* Latin, "see the other (things)." *f.* Latin, "force." *g.* *necesse est*.

*B.* <sup>117</sup>To show that Verres did not buy the statues <sup>9</sup>in an honorable manner, but by <sup>a</sup>injustice, Cicero said <sup>87</sup>that Heius, <sup>b</sup>who always had an abundance of ready money, 'was in no way forced to sell anything; (and further that,) <sup>85</sup>even if he had been in debt, yet he would not have sold those statues which had been in his family and in the chapel of his ancestors for so many years; <sup>a</sup>and that 'he<sup>50</sup> could not have been persuaded <sup>118</sup>to take even a gréat sum of money for these monuments.<sup>47</sup> <sup>75</sup>"Let us see," he says, "how great that sum was <sup>185</sup>which could <sup>127</sup>lead Heius astray." It appears <sup>98</sup>that all these statues were sold to Verres <sup>12</sup>for six thousand five hundred sesterces.

*a.* *per.* *b.* *to have an abundance of ready money* = *in suis nummis multis esse.* *c.* Latin, "was compelled by no force." *d.* *and . . . not,*

neque. *e.* Latin, "it could not have been persuaded to him." The passive of an intransitive verb is impersonal. *f.* Latin, "that he should place greatness of money before."

### EXERCISE V

*A.* 1. <sup>78</sup>While Murena<sup>a</sup> was lieutenant to Lucullus, he so conducted himself in a most important war <sup>122</sup>that he performed<sup>b</sup> many glorious exploits<sup>c</sup> <sup>d</sup>in the absence of the commander-in-chief. 2. These things <sup>109</sup>I would not hesitate to say <sup>2</sup>in the presence of Lucullus himself, for they are all witnessed to <sup>10</sup>in the public dispatches. 3. Lucullus has given him as much praise<sup>61</sup> as an ambitious commander could <sup>74</sup>while sharing his glory with another. 4. <sup>119</sup>Do you know <sup>120</sup>how many years<sup>188</sup> Murena was with<sup>e</sup> the army? 5. <sup>184</sup>After he had returned to Rome,<sup>105</sup> some thought that he ought not to contend <sup>f</sup>for office with those who had remained<sup>127</sup> at home.<sup>101</sup> 6. Who can doubt <sup>124</sup>that, <sup>73</sup>for acquiring the consulship, the glory of military affairs contributes much more than <sup>g</sup>that of the civil law? 7. Lawyers<sup>46</sup> have to wake up before light <sup>117</sup>to give answers to their clients, soldiers<sup>46</sup> to draw up the line of battle. 8. <sup>32</sup>The one must take heed <sup>118</sup>lest his clients, the other lest his camp, be captured. 9. We all know <sup>87</sup>that valor <sup>h</sup>in war won eternal glory for the Romans and compelled the world to obey their commands.<sup>49</sup> 10. <sup>184</sup>As soon as a suspicion of a disturbance is heard, all other arts become still.

*a.* See Part I sec. 18. *b.* See Part I sec. 114. *c.* *rēs*. *d.* Latin, "without." *e.* *apud*. *f.* Latin, "concerning honors." *g.* The redundant *that* in *that of* is not expressed in Latin. *h.* Latin, "warlike," agreeing with "valor."

*B.* It appears further from the accounts of Heius <sup>98</sup>that Verres bought the Cupid of Praxiteles, <sup>a</sup>a statue <sup>b</sup>praised to the skies by those who are <sup>c</sup>judges of these things,<sup>57</sup> for

sixteen hundred sesterces.<sup>12</sup> Great heavens! <sup>a</sup>it is no wonder <sup>123</sup>that he preferred to buy (it) rather than to ask (for it). For who of you<sup>61</sup> is ignorant <sup>64</sup>at how great a price these things are valued,<sup>120</sup> and <sup>64</sup>for how much they are wont to be sold? I have seen a small statue of bronze sold for forty thousand<sup>12</sup> sesterces, and, <sup>40</sup>if I wished, I could name men who have bought<sup>86</sup> them for even more.<sup>64</sup> Is it not manifest, therefore, <sup>98</sup>that Heius <sup>c</sup>could not have been induced<sup>90</sup> (to sell) by the greatness<sup>10</sup> of the sum?

*a.* Latin, "which statue was," etc. *b.* *to praise to the skies* = *ad caelum ferre*. *c.* Latin, "zealous for." *d.* Latin, "it is not wonderful."  
*e.* Use adjective. *f.* Latin, "not to have been able to be induced."

## EXERCISE VI

*A. 1.* In his oration for<sup>a</sup> Murena the orator speaks wittily of the civil law. 2. Formerly only a few knew <sup>120</sup>whether a thing could be done legally or not. 3. <sup>41</sup>If I had advanced sufficiently <sup>74</sup>in speaking, I would speak more sparingly in<sup>b</sup> its praise. 4. Cicero places the orator before the lawyer,<sup>47</sup> <sup>85</sup>because (he says) the latter<sup>110</sup> needs to know only the law, but the former must also have skill in speaking. 5. He adds <sup>87</sup>that there are two arts which can place men in the highest rank of dignity: one, that<sup>c</sup> of general; the other, that<sup>c</sup> of a good orator. 6. For by the latter<sup>4</sup> the ornaments of peace are preserved, by the former<sup>4</sup> the dangers of war are repelled. 7. <sup>87</sup>Although the other virtues are of importance, <sup>75</sup>let that one be the first in the state because of which the state itself is the chief of all (states). 8. <sup>95</sup>Would that all men, O Servius,<sup>a</sup> were <sup>c</sup>as eminent as you are in good faith,<sup>16</sup> modesty, and temperance. 9. <sup>87</sup>Though Cato says that the tribes of Asia <sup>99</sup>are to be despised, I will show that our wars with them have



been the most grievous. 10. Tell<sup>f</sup> me, <sup>119</sup>did not Lucius Scipio, <sup>97</sup>after subduing Asia, assume the cognomen Asiaticus?

*a.* I.e. "in behalf of." *b.* Latin, "concerning." *c.* See Exercise v. *A*, note *g*. *d.* See Part II sec. 32. *e.* Latin, "eminent equally as you."

*B.* Cicero feared <sup>118</sup>that Heius, <sup>84</sup>since he was chief of the embassy that had been sent<sup>127</sup> by the Mamertini <sup>73</sup>to praise Verres, would be silent about his private wrongs. However, <sup>84</sup>since he hoped that this man, who was regarded <sup>86</sup>as the most noble in<sup>a</sup> all his city, <sup>94</sup>would at least confess that the statues were not <sup>101</sup>at his house, <sup>b</sup>he had the courage <sup>90</sup>to present him as a witness.<sup>28</sup> <sup>c</sup>And in this hope he was not disappointed, for, though Heius praised Verres officially, he told the truth about the statues.

*a.* Latin, "of." *b.* Latin, "he dared." *c.* Latin, "and from this hope he was not cast down."

#### EXERCISE VII

*A.* 1. <sup>84</sup>Since Cato was <sup>a</sup>of the same character as I see that you are, he would never have set out for that war, <sup>40</sup>if he thought it <sup>99</sup>was to be fought against <sup>b</sup>women. 2. There is no doubt <sup>124</sup>that <sup>2</sup>by the crushing of Carthage the republic was delivered from the greatest dangers.<sup>14</sup> 3. <sup>184</sup>After Scipio<sup>c</sup> had driven Hannibal out of Africa, he was persuaded by the senate <sup>118</sup>to set out as lieutenant to his brother. 4. <sup>88</sup>If you (will) consider <sup>120</sup>what sort of a man Mithradates was,<sup>185</sup> you will place him before all the kings<sup>47</sup> with whom the Roman people have waged war. 5. Sulla, no inexperienced general <sup>d</sup>to say the least, <sup>2</sup>made peace with him and let him go. 6. The king, <sup>2</sup>after taking several years <sup>73</sup>to strengthen his forces, <sup>e</sup>set out for Italy itself <sup>10</sup>with a fleet. 7. Two consuls were sent to Asia, <sup>117</sup>that the one might pursue the king and the other protect the province. 8. The

disastrous fortunes<sup>r</sup> of one of them by land and sea greatly increased the power and fame<sup>s</sup> of the king. 9. The king<sup>n</sup> attacked Cyzicus with all his forces, <sup>85</sup>because he thought that that city <sup>94</sup>would be the door of Asia. 10. Tell me, <sup>119</sup>do you think that naval battle, when the enemy's fleet<sup>i</sup> was hastening to Italy, was an ordinary struggle?

*a.* Latin, "such . . . as." *b.* Latin, "with." *c.* Place first. For the construction, see 50. *d.* ut minimē dicam. *e.* Latin, "sought." *f.* rēs. *g.* Latin, "name." *h.* Latin, "made an attack against the Cyzicenes." *i.* Latin, "was seeking."

*B.* <sup>40</sup>The Mamertini would never have sent the embassy <sup>104</sup>from Messana to Rome <sup>129</sup>to assist Verres, "had he not shown them public favors; not, however, without great loss to the republic and the province of Sicily. For the grain which they were wont to give<sup>90</sup> to the Roman people yearly he remitted for three years,<sup>138</sup> and throughout those years he levied neither a ship nor a soldier, <sup>b</sup>though they were due according to the treaty.

*a.* Latin, "unless he had favored them publicly." *b.* Express by a relative clause of characteristic which here denotes concession.

### EXERCISE VIII

*A.* 1. <sup>134</sup>After the king had been expelled from his kingdom,<sup>14</sup> he <sup>a</sup>combined his forces with those<sup>48</sup> of his son-in-law. 2. He says that <sup>85</sup>if he<sup>46</sup> had had to speak about the exploits of our army, <sup>b</sup>he could have mentioned many very great battles. 3. Nor would the senate have thought<sup>40</sup> "it necessary to undertake this war <sup>9</sup>with such care, <sup>40</sup>if that king <sup>99</sup>had deserved contempt. 4. <sup>132</sup>When Lucullus had waged war against the king <sup>138</sup>for many years, the business<sup>71</sup> of finishing it was assigned<sup>a</sup> to Pompey. 5. <sup>119</sup>Do you know <sup>120</sup>what the Bosphorus is? It is a place<sup>86</sup> "to which an

army cannot approach. 6. Mithradates, <sup>87</sup>though he was in extreme peril, nevertheless retained the royal name. 7. <sup>87</sup>Even if the enemy should be driven out of all his coasts, yet I should not regard the victory as mine <sup>133</sup>until I should drive him out of life <sup>14</sup>itself. 8. The life of the king was regarded (as) <sup>64</sup>of such importance that the war was not considered finished <sup>97</sup> <sup>133</sup>until his death was announced. 9. Is there any one <sup>86</sup>who doubts <sup>124</sup>that Murena, as lieutenant, was (a man) of the greatest courage <sup>64</sup>? 10. <sup>78</sup>To acquire the consulship there is need not only of industry <sup>11</sup>in the forum but also of many other things.<sup>11</sup>

*a.* Latin, "joined his forces to." *b.* *futūrum* *fuisse* ut, etc., because *possum* has no fut. part. *c.* Latin, "that this war ought to be undertaken." *d.* Latin, "allotted." *e.* Latin, "whither." *f.* Latin, "I should not possess the victory." *g.* Express by an adjective.

*B.* Cicero truly says <sup>87</sup>that Verres "did at Messina" <sup>101</sup>as pirates are wont to do, who, though they are common enemies of all, yet have <sup>87</sup>some friends, whom <sup>49</sup>they not only spare, <sup>36</sup>but even enrich <sup>86</sup>with booty <sup>10</sup>; and those especially who have <sup>86</sup>a town in a convenient place, to which their ships <sup>46</sup>must often go.<sup>127</sup> Such was Phaselis of Cilicia, a town once inhabited <sup>4</sup>by the best men, but which was in a place so situated that pirates sailing from Cilicia often touched there, and which they finally bound to themselves <sup>47</sup>by an alliance.<sup>10</sup>

*a.* Latin, "did so . . . as." *b.* Latin, "whither it must often be approached by their ships." Impersonal passive second periphrastic. *c.* Latin, "of this kind." *d.* Latin, "which town was," etc. *e.* Latin, "was so placed." *f.* Latin, "came to land to it."

### EXERCISE IX

*A.* 1. What sea has agitations of its waves equal to the disturbances that move the comitia? 2. It often happens <sup>123</sup>that the smallest breath of rumor changes everything.

3. Sometimes things are done without any apparent cause,<sup>122</sup> so that, strange to say,<sup>180</sup> <sup>b</sup> the people themselves wonder<sup>120</sup> at what they themselves have done. 4. Nothing is more obscure than men's wishes<sup>6</sup> and nothing more uncertain than the common people.<sup>6</sup> 5. Who thought that Catulus,<sup>22</sup> (a man)<sup>13</sup> of the greatest talent, wealth, and influence, could be overcome<sup>4</sup> by Manlius? 6. Not even<sup>182</sup> when this had happened, could it be explained<sup>c</sup> <sup>120</sup> why it had so happened. 7. <sup>76</sup> Don't impose more labor<sup>61</sup> on the soldier<sup>47</sup> than you have taken upon yourself.<sup>115</sup> 8. <sup>64</sup> Of how much value do you think it is, for (gaining) a reputation, <sup>98</sup> to be considered<sup>d</sup> fortunate<sup>28</sup> and brave<sup>28</sup>? 9. <sup>84</sup> Since we ourselves are delighted with the games,<sup>5</sup> <sup>121</sup> why should we wonder at<sup>e</sup> the ignorant multitude?

*a.* Latin, "has such great . . . as." *b.* Latin, "even the people."  
*c.* Latin, "be perceived." *d.* Latin, "to be held." *e.* *dē*.

*B.* As the pirates of Cilicia used<sup>a</sup> Phaselis,<sup>17</sup> so Verres the pirate of Sicily used<sup>a</sup> Messana. Hither all the booty was brought and concealed, thence everything was secretly sent to Italy. And in that harbor he had<sup>b</sup> a very large ship built<sup>98</sup> to carry<sup>117</sup> the plunder. In return for these favors,<sup>c</sup> exemption was granted by him<sup>d</sup> from all expense, labor, and military service, and, <sup>e</sup> so far as I know, the Mamertini were the only ones not only in Sicily but in the whole world <sup>86</sup> who were exempt<sup>f</sup> from these burdens.

*a.* The verb needs to be expressed but once. *b.* Latin, "saw to," "cared for." *c.* Latin, "things." *d.* Latin, "of." *e.* Cf. Gram. § 535. *d* (320. *d*); B. 283. 5; H. 591. 3 (503. N. 1); H-B. 521. 1. *f.* *f.* Latin, "free."

### EXERCISE X

*A.* 1. Cicero says <sup>87</sup> that games delight men, <sup>87</sup> though they sometimes pretend not. 2. You led the Roman people

<sup>122</sup>to fear <sup>118</sup>that Catiline would become consul.<sup>28</sup> 3. His countenance was full of rage,<sup>57</sup> his eyes of crime, his speech of arrogance. 4. Surrounded<sup>97</sup> by a band of assassins, he used to threaten the republic<sup>49</sup> and the lives<sup>a</sup> of all the citizens. 5. <sup>5</sup>In consequence of these things, <sup>113</sup>you yourselves remember <sup>b</sup>what fear he inspired<sup>120</sup> in all good men<sup>47</sup> and what great despair seized the state. 6. <sup>c</sup>He said that the wretched ought<sup>d</sup> not to believe the promises<sup>49</sup> of the fortunate. 7. <sup>117</sup>That we might be able to discuss <sup>e</sup>these matters in the senate, a resolution of the senate was passed, <sup>2</sup>on my motion, <sup>82</sup>that the comitia should not be held the next day.<sup>139</sup> 8. And so on the next day, <sup>f</sup>in a full meeting of the senate, I commanded Catiline to speak, <sup>83</sup>if he wished to say anything concerning the matters <sup>127</sup>which had been reported to me. 9. Catiline said that there were two bodies of the republic, the one<sup>82</sup> feeble <sup>13</sup>with a weak head, the other powerful without a head. 10. <sup>g</sup>“The latter,”<sup>110</sup> said Catiline, “shall never want a head <sup>2</sup>as long as I am alive.”

*a.* Latin uses singular. *b.* The Latin uses only one verb for both clauses, “what fear was inspired in all the good and how great despair in the republic.” *c.* *He said* . . . *not*, *negāvit*. *d.* *oportere*. *e.* Latin, “concerning these matters.” *f.* Latin, “the senate being crowded,” *abl. abs.* *g.* Latin, “to the latter a head shall never be wanting.”

*B.* <sup>a</sup>Is there <sup>111</sup>any state so barbarous or any king so powerful <sup>122</sup>that he would not invite a Roman senator to his home<sup>108</sup>? <sup>b</sup>An honor which is paid,<sup>c</sup> not to the man alone, but primarily<sup>d</sup> to the Roman people. Yet when I, a senator, was at Messana, I was not invited publicly by the citizens, but <sup>40</sup>would have spent the night <sup>e</sup>in the public streets had not the splendid house of Basiliscus been open to me; <sup>f</sup>with whom I would have lodged <sup>37</sup>even if I had been invited by the citizens. No other state has ever done this since<sup>g</sup> the founding<sup>97</sup> of the city.

- a.* A question expecting a negative answer is how introduced?  
*b.* *quī* honor. Why not honor *quī*? *c.* Use *habēō*. *d.* Latin, "first."  
*e.* in *pūblicō*. *f.* Latin, "whither I would have gone to lodge."  
*g.* Latin, "from."

## EXERCISE XI

*A.* 1. The senators were not severe enough <sup>a</sup>in their action, in part because <sup>b</sup>they had no fear, in part because they had <sup>c</sup>a great deal. 2. <sup>d</sup>Catiline<sup>48</sup> ought not to have been allowed to go forth from the senate alive. 3. In that same body he had replied to Cato<sup>187</sup> a few days before with threatening words. 4. I descended to the Campus <sup>8</sup>with a very strong body-guard, <sup>85</sup>because I knew that armed men had been led there by Catiline. 5. I wore a breastplate, not <sup>117</sup>to protect me, but in order that all the good might perceive in what fear and danger the consul was. 6. <sup>e</sup>Ought we to wonder that Catiline's desire <sup>71</sup>for gaining<sup>f</sup> the consulship was <sup>52</sup>of great assistance to Murena? 7. Now, since Murena so wishes, it remains <sup>123</sup>for me to speak on the charges of bribery. 8. It often happened <sup>123</sup>that Roman magistrates were convicted of bribery.<sup>68</sup> 9. <sup>121</sup>Who does not judge those men fortunate, who, removed from the pursuits of ambition, <sup>8</sup>lead lives of ease and tranquillity? 10. <sup>117</sup>To omit other matters, <sup>h</sup>what of the fact that Murena's accuser is his father's friend?

- a.* Latin, "in decreeing." *b.* Latin, "they feared nothing." *c.* I.e. "much." *d.* An apodosis to a contrary-to-fact condition with omitted protasis. The construction is impersonal. *e.* Latin, "ought it to be wondered." *f.* I.e. "acquiring." *g.* Latin, "have followed ease," etc.  
*h.* *quid* quod.

*B.* <sup>121</sup>What shall I say about the cross which he <sup>a</sup>caused <sup>98</sup>to be erected near the harbor of the city, on which he dared to hang<sup>b</sup> a Roman citizen <sup>2</sup>in the sight of many, and which still stands in your territory as a monument of

cruelty? This you ought to have destroyed and cast down into the sea <sup>131</sup>before you came to Rome <sup>129</sup>to praise Verres. Your city is the only one where <sup>c</sup>travelers, when they arrive <sup>d</sup>from Italy, see the cross of a Roman citizen <sup>181</sup>before they see <sup>e</sup>any friend of the Roman people.

*a.* cūrō with the gerundive. *b.* Latin, "raise." *c.* ad quam. *d.* Perf. subjv. *e.* Latin, "any one a friend."

### EXERCISE XII

*A.* 1. Cato is so violent a prosecutor <sup>122</sup>that I fear his <sup>a</sup>high standing more than I do his charge. 2. <sup>75</sup>Let not the high standing of the prosecutor injure Murena. 3. Publius Scipio had been twice consul and had destroyed those two terrors of this empire, Carthage and Numantia, when he prosecuted Cotta. 4. <sup>b</sup>He was a man of the greatest eloquence, good faith, and integrity. 5. Since this oration <sup>99</sup>is not to be delivered by me before an ignorant multitude, I will speak <sup>c</sup>somewhat boldly about the pursuits of culture. 6. The Stoics affirmed that a wise man never repented of anything, <sup>66</sup>was deceived in nothing, and never changed his opinion. 7. Do you think that you would be wicked, <sup>84</sup>if you should do <sup>d</sup>something from a feeling of mercy? 8. <sup>88</sup>If any one confesses that he has sinned and begs pardon for his wrong-doing, <sup>60</sup>he <sup>50</sup>ought to be forgiven. 9. <sup>87</sup>Even if certain philosophers declare that all offenses are equal, yet we know that there are different kinds of wrong-doing and unequal punishments. 10. We read in Cicero that if he had not distrusted his own abilities, <sup>49e</sup>he would not have sought the aid of learning.

*a.* auctōritās. *b.* Latin, "in him was the greatest," etc. *c.* paulō audācius. *d.* Latin, "anything induced by mercy." *e.* Singular.

*B.* In his robberies Verres <sup>a</sup>made much use of the assistance <sup>17</sup>of Tlepolemus and Hiero, brothers, of whom one



modeled in <sup>b</sup> wax, the other was a painter. These, <sup>84</sup>since they were suspected by their fellow-citizens <sup>a</sup>of having plundered the temple of Apollo, fled <sup>97</sup> from home, and, because they knew that Verres was <sup>c</sup>devoted to their art, betook themselves to him. This happened <sup>188</sup> while Verres was in Asia, but <sup>g</sup>from that time on <sup>h</sup>he kept them with him and later took <sup>i</sup> them to Sicily. And after they arrived there they found out <sup>9</sup> in some way <sup>120</sup> where everything <sup>k</sup> was, and whatever pleased them <sup>l</sup> was sure to be lost.

*a.* Latin, "used much the assistance." *b.* Latin, "out of." *c.* Latin, "they had come into suspicion to their citizens." *d.* Infinitive. *e.* Latin, "desirous of." *f.* Use the plural. *g.* *illō tempore.* *h.* Latin, "he had them with himself." *i.* *dūcō.* *j.* Latin, "whither after they arrived." *k.* I.e. "each thing." *l.* Second periphrastic.

### EXERCISE XIII

*A.* 1. Cato, <sup>40</sup>if you <sup>51</sup> had had other teachers, you would be a little more inclined to mercy. 2. "It is said that the famous <sup>110</sup> Scipio <sup>b</sup> used to keep a very learned man at his house <sup>117</sup> that he might become wiser himself. 3. Although those precepts were the same (as these) that <sup>c</sup> delight you, yet he was made more merciful rather than more cruel. 4. "Laelius did not repent of doing the same thing; and who, I pray, was wiser than he <sup>6</sup>? 5. Do you think that any one was more courteous than your grandfather <sup>6</sup>? 6. When you were speaking concerning his surpassing virtue, you said that you had him as a model <sup>78</sup> for imitation. 7. Therefore, <sup>117</sup> to return <sup>c</sup> to the point with which I began, I ask whether these things seem done <sup>97</sup> contrary to law. 8. <sup>88</sup> If they were done, no one can doubt <sup>124</sup> that they were done contrary to law. 9. Do you think it ridiculous to leave that uncertain <sup>127</sup> which is doubtful, and to pass judgment on that which can be doubtful to no one? 10. <sup>88</sup> If



you can<sup>f</sup> prove that those (acts) were committed by Murena, I will admit that they were illegal.<sup>g</sup>

*a.* Use the personal construction. *b.* Latin, "had." *c.* Relative. *d.* Latin, "it did not repent Lælius to do," etc. *e.* Latin, "to that which I began." *f.* Future tense. *g.* Latin, "committed against the law."

*B.* Pamphilus,<sup>51</sup> a friend of Cicero's, had two cups <sup>13</sup>of great weight which he was ordered to bring to the prætor's house.<sup>106</sup> <sup>a</sup>When he arrived there the prætor <sup>79</sup>was resting, but the brothers, <sup>184</sup>when they saw him, straightway asked him where the cups were. Pamphilus showed himself greatly disturbed<sup>97</sup> and began to complain <sup>87</sup>that <sup>b</sup>he would have nothing left <sup>64</sup>of any value, <sup>84</sup>if the cups should be taken away. Then they said, "What are you willing to give us that they may not be taken from you?" He replied that he would give a thousand sesterces. So <sup>c</sup>Pamphilus was allowed to keep the cups.

*a.* Latin, "whither when he had arrived." *b.* Latin, "he would have nothing which was of any value." *c.* Latin, "it was allowed to Pamphilus."

#### EXERCISE XIV

*A.* 1. Many went out to meet Murena<sup>47</sup> returning<sup>100</sup> from his province. 2. It was an ancient custom at Rome <sup>123</sup>that men <sup>a</sup>of the lower orders conducted candidates <sup>b</sup>for the consulship to the Campus Martius. 3. <sup>76</sup>Do not <sup>c</sup>deprive the lower class<sup>54</sup> of men of this enjoyment. 4. <sup>76</sup>Permit those who hope for all things from us, themselves also to have something <sup>86</sup>which they can bestow upon us. 5. Do you know why they opposed the decree<sup>49</sup> of the senate <sup>88</sup>which was passed <sup>2</sup>in the consulship of Cæsar? 6. There is no law which can prevent him <sup>a</sup>from inviting his friends to his house. 7. Although this was not done by Murena at all, yet <sup>c</sup>when was there a time, either within our own recollection<sup>189</sup>

or that<sup>f</sup> of our fathers, in which this has not occurred<sup>36</sup>? 8. But what is the need of words<sup>11</sup>? <sup>119</sup>The senate does not think it a crime to go out and meet some one, does it? 9. A youth <sup>13</sup>of the highest rank<sup>g</sup> does not hire men for pay<sup>78</sup> to attend him. 10. Cato <sup>h</sup>says that <sup>74</sup>in choosing magistrates the judgment of men ought not to be corrupted by gifts of food, by games, and by other pleasures.

*a.* Express by *tenuis*, -e. *b.* Express by adjective. *c.* Latin, "take this enjoyment from," etc. *d.* A *quin*-clause after a verb of hindering. See Gram. *e.* Latin, "what time was there ever." *f.* See Exercise v. *A*, note *g.* *g.* Latin, "place." *h.* *says . . . not, negō.*

*B.* Although Verres<sup>a</sup> used the eyes<sup>17</sup> of those brothers in his robberies, yet <sup>b</sup>he was so desirous of being thought knowing in these matters himself, that recently, after he was already <sup>c</sup>as good as condemned, when he was at the house of Lucius Sisenna, he could not refrain <sup>d</sup>from handling the silver plate which was set out in the dining-room. The house was full of distinguished men, <sup>61</sup>of whom some wondered at his boldness and others at his folly. But the slaves of Sisenna, <sup>34</sup>who had heard the testimony, <sup>e</sup>never took their eyes off from him.

*a.* Place first. Why? *b.* Express by *cupiō* followed by the infinitive with subj. acc. *c.* *prō* with abl. of the perf. pass. part. *d.* See Exercise XIV. *A*, note *d.* *e.* Latin, "nowhere cast down their eyes from him."

#### EXERCISE XV

*A. 1.* <sup>121</sup>Shall I seek supreme authority <sup>74</sup>by tendering pleasures to men, and by soothing their minds? 2. Although the Spartans reclined on hard oak <sup>139</sup>at their daily meals, they retained their <sup>a</sup>public institutions no better than the Romans. 3. <sup>b</sup>One ought to set apart times for pleasure<sup>60</sup> as well as for labor. 4. Therefore, Cato, do not <sup>10</sup>in too severe language censure the usages of our ancestors, which

experience itself has justified. 5. Maximus gave a banquet to the Roman people to honor the dead Africanus. 6. A certain man was asked by Maximus <sup>118</sup>to spread a dining-couch. 7. He spread it <sup>42</sup>as if some common man were dead, and not as if the death of that godlike man Africanus were being honored. 8. Maximus thanked the immortal gods because Scipio was born in this republic <sup>a</sup>rather than in any other. 9. For it was inevitable<sup>e</sup> <sup>93</sup>that the sovereignty of the world would be there where he was. 10. The Roman people hate private luxury, public magnificence they love.

*a.* *rēs publicās.* *b.* Latin, "times ought to be set apart both for . . . and for." *c.* *rēs ipsa.* *d.* Latin, "beyond all others." *e.* I.e. "necessary."

*B.* <sup>2</sup>During the prætorship of Verres all the silver plate was taken away from Sicily. <sup>a</sup>The prætor claimed that he had bought it; but when Cicero demanded the accounts, that he might know <sup>b</sup>from whom and <sup>64</sup>for how much the former<sup>110</sup> had bought each (piece), Verres said that he had no accounts of those years when he had acquired the most things. <sup>c</sup>And yet, <sup>41</sup>if he were innocent, he ought to have accounts of his purchases and ought to present them.

*a.* Connect by a relative, "which the prætor claimed, etc." *b.* *unde.* *c.* *quamquam.*

#### EXERCISE XVI

*A.* 1. <sup>78</sup>For choosing a magistrate, men's minds ought to be influenced<sup>a</sup> by nothing except worth. 2. <sup>128</sup>As to your saying that men <sup>13</sup>of the greatest worth observe this course of action: why, pray, do you yourself ask any one <sup>118</sup>to assist you in your canvass? 3. Do you ask <sup>118</sup>that I intrust myself to you? Ought I to be asked by you or you rather by me? 4. Candidates used to have a slave <sup>117</sup>from whom they might ask the names of the citizens. 5. Cicero says that it is shameful <sup>b</sup>that a slave should know the citizens better than

you do yourself. 6. Though the candidates were thus instructed, they saluted citizens <sup>42</sup>as if they knew them themselves. 7. After they had been elected, they saluted much <sup>7</sup>more carelessly. 8. The enjoyment of games, gladiators, and banquets ought not to be taken <sup>54</sup>from the Roman plebeians. 9. That which I do, gentlemen of the jury, I do not only because of friendship, but especially for the sake of peace and harmony, and finally for the lives of us all. 10. <sup>95</sup>Would that all consuls were like Cicero, <sup>45</sup>who spent whole days and nights planning <sup>100</sup>for the republic.

*a.* Latin, "enticed." *b.* Latin, "that the citizens be better known to a slave than to yourself." *c.* Latin, "concerning."

*B.* Cicero blamed Verres because he took everything he wished from Cælius of Lilybæum, and did not hesitate <sup>90</sup>to take a very beautiful table from Diodorus, who was made a Roman citizen by Sulla. But he rejoiced because Verres had robbed Apollonius of Drepanum <sup>14</sup>of all his silver plate, and thought that nothing better had been done by him. For Apollonius was very similar in character <sup>16</sup>to Verres himself, and, <sup>187</sup>several months <sup>131</sup>before Verres came to Sicily, had taken a great sum of money from some children of whom he was the guardian.

•

#### EXERCISE XVII

*A.* 1. Lucius Catiline did not so despise the republic <sup>a</sup>as to think that he would subdue this city with those forces <sup>127</sup>which he led out with him. 2. Do you <sup>25</sup>ask me why I fear Catiline? I fear him because this contagion of crime extends more widely than any one thinks. 3. <sup>2</sup>While I am consul, you will never be caught sleeping. <sup>100</sup>4. I have taken care <sup>b</sup>that no one should fear him; but his forces, which I see here, these, I say, <sup>c</sup>are to be feared. 5. Nor is

Catiline's army so much to be feared as those who are said to have deserted that army. 6. Those whose swords<sup>d</sup> I have often restrained<sup>101</sup> at my house now wish a good consul to be deposed by your decision.<sup>e</sup> 7. If you shall betray<sup>f</sup> one of your consuls to them, they will have gained much<sup>7</sup> more by your decision<sup>e</sup> than by their swords. 8. <sup>67</sup>It is of great concern<sup>93</sup> that there should be two consuls in this republic<sup>139</sup> on the first of January. 9. That which I accomplished<sup>g</sup> in spite of the opposition of many, could never<sup>94</sup> have been done in ordinary ways. 10. Don't think that I am speaking empty words! Plans have been formed<sup>60</sup> for destroying the city and for<sup>h</sup> wiping out the Roman name.

*a.* Latin, "that he thought." *b.* Latin, "lest any one." *c.* Infinitive of the second periphrastic. *d.* Singular. *e.* Latin, "opinions." *f.* Latin, "the one consul." *g.* Latin, "many opposing." *h.* Latin, "extinguishing."

*B.* There was a man, Diodorus by name,<sup>16</sup> of Malta, who had for many years been living<sup>79</sup> at Lilybæum. <sup>a</sup>Word was brought to Verres concerning this man, that he had (some) very beautiful drinking-cups, made with the greatest skill by the hand of Mentor. <sup>b</sup>When he heard this, <sup>c</sup>he summoned Diodorus to him and demanded the cups. The latter, <sup>84</sup>since he wished to save his (property), declared that the cups were not at Lilybæum but that he had left them at Malta at the house of a certain relative. Then Verres straightway sent trustworthy (men) to Malta<sup>117</sup> to search for them.

*a.* Latin, "it was announced to Verres." *b.* Use relative to make connection, "which when he had heard." *c.* Abl. abs.

#### EXERCISE XVIII

*A.* 1. Cicero doubts<sup>120</sup> if it is right to call those<sup>127</sup> who are planning these things with reference to their country citizens. 2. Authority is not wanting to the republic, but

<sup>11</sup>there is need of a brave consul <sup>a</sup>to meet the schemes<sup>47</sup> of these men and to resist crime.<sup>49</sup> 3. He desired to deliver the republic to Murena in a sound condition <sup>b</sup>and for him to defend it from great dangers. 4. Do you not see, gentlemen of the jury, what other evil is added to these evils? 5. Everything which has been plotted<sup>c</sup> during <sup>d</sup>the last three years you know to be breaking out at this time. 6. <sup>121</sup>What shall I write of the man who formed the design of murdering the senate? 7. What place is there, what time, what day, what night, that<sup>e</sup> I have not been delivered from their secret plots? 8. I confess that I escaped not by my own prudence,<sup>f</sup> but much more by the providence<sup>g</sup> of the gods. 9. It is clear <sup>93</sup>that they did not wish to kill me <sup>g</sup>as an individual, but to remove a watchful consul from the guardianship of the state. 10. <sup>h</sup>And they would be just as glad, Cato, to put you out of the way too, <sup>40</sup>if they could; <sup>i</sup>and, believe me,<sup>49</sup> that is what they are planning (to do).

*a.* A *quī*-clause of characteristic. *b.* Latin, "to be defended (by him) from," etc. Expressed by the gerundive of purpose agreeing with "republic." *c.* Latin, "agitated." *d.* Latin, "this period-of-three-years." *e.* Latin, "when." *f.* *cōsilium*, express but once. *g.* *meō nōmine*. *h.* Latin, "nor would they wish less." *i.* Latin, "that which, believe me," etc.

*B.* Diodorus, <sup>100</sup>fearing this, wrote <sup>a</sup>to his relative and ordered him to reply to those who <sup>127</sup>had come from Verres, that he<sup>115</sup> had sent those cups to Lilybæum<sup>105</sup> a few days before. Meanwhile Diodorus went away, for he <sup>b</sup>preferred to be away from home for a little time rather than, being present, to lose his silver. When he heard this,<sup>c</sup> Verres was so disturbed that he seemed mad beyond a doubt. He threatened the absent Diodorus,<sup>49</sup> <sup>d</sup>and affirmed that the latter<sup>110</sup> had stolen some beautiful cups from him.

*a.* Not dative. *b.* *preferred* . . . *rather* is expressed by a form of *mālō*. *c.* A connecting relative in Latin. *d.* Express by pres. part.

## EXERCISE XIX

*A.* 1. They see how much talent,<sup>61</sup> how much authority, there is in you. 2. But they did not think they could crush you,<sup>131</sup> before they had *a*stripped you of the assistance<sup>14</sup> of the consul. 3. They hope that <sup>88</sup>if you are without a consul, the republic will be without guardianship. 4. Catiline is not to be feared,<sup>55</sup> provided good citizens are mindful that they are born not <sup>53</sup>for themselves, but for the fatherland. 5. <sup>b</sup>It is your duty, Cato, to keep as your ally a consul experienced <sup>57</sup>in military matters. 6. Since all civil power *c*over this affair is vested in you, gentlemen of the jury, you, in this cause, hold (sway over) the entire republic. 7. <sup>40</sup>If Catiline could pass judgment in *d*this case, he would condemn Murena; he would kill him, if he could. 8. *e*It cannot be that most honorable men will *f*pass the same judgment as that gladiator would have passed. 9. Believe me,<sup>49</sup> in this case you are passing judgment not only about the safety of Murena, but also your own safety. 10. *g*We have no means <sup>86</sup>of recovering ourselves <sup>183</sup>until new forces are prepared.

*a.* Latin, "seen you stripped." *b.* Latin, "it is yours." *c.* Latin genitive. *d.* Latin, "concerning." *e.* *ferī nōn potest ut.* *f.* Latin, "judge the same as." *g.* Latin, "there is nothing now whence we may."

*B.* In order in some manner to recall Diodorus to Sicily, Verres does not hesitate<sup>a</sup> to instigate a certain man <sup>b</sup>to say that he wishes *c*to bring Diodorus to trial on a capital charge. At first this seemed surprising to all, since Diodorus was a very peaceable man and far removed from every suspicion; but soon it was apparent <sup>98</sup>that all this was done because of the silver. Meanwhile Diodorus had fled to Rome and had told the affair to his friends, who were so aroused that the father of Verres, *d*in great alarm, sent a letter to his son <sup>82</sup>that he should beware *e*what he did concerning Diodorus.



*a.* See Part I sec. 167. *b.* Not infinitive. *c.* Latin, "to make Diodorus a defendant of." *d.* Latin, "greatly terrified." *e.* Latin, "see."

## EXERCISE XX

*A.* 1. "The enemy," said Cicero, "is not on<sup>a</sup> the Anio, — which at<sup>139</sup> the time of the Punic war seemed a terrible thing, — but he is in the city." 2. <sup>128</sup>The fact that there are some enemies even in that sanctuary of the republic, the senate-house itself, can not be mentioned without a groan. 3. <sup>95</sup>May the gods <sup>b</sup>grant my colleague power to crush Catiline. 4. I, fellow citizens, <sup>c</sup>in the garb of peace, <sup>2</sup>with you and all good men as assistants, will avert the dangers which threaten. 5. <sup>38</sup>If this curse of the state escapes<sup>d</sup> from our hands, madness will run riot on the Rostra, fear in the senate-house, conspiracy in the forum. 6. Then fire and sword, which <sup>78</sup>have long been preparing, will burst forth <sup>73</sup>to lay waste the land. 7. Yet all these things will be easily suppressed by the counsels of the magistrates, if the republic is furnished with suitable<sup>e</sup> guards. 8. Since this is so, for the sake of the republic, <sup>6</sup>than which nothing ought to be dearer to any one, I urge you <sup>f</sup>to provide for your safety. 9. I pray and beseech you, gentlemen of the jury, do not overwhelm Murena with a new (cause for) sorrow. 10. Murena seemed fortunate because <sup>g</sup>he was the first to bring the consulship to his ancient family.

*a.* apud. *b.* Latin, "bring it about (*faciō*) that my colleague may be able." *c.* Latin, "dressed in the toga." *d.* See Part I sec. 71. *e.* suus. *f.* Not infinitive. *g.* Latin, "he had first brought."

*B.* Now the father of Verres had written "as follows: "Beware what you do concerning Diodorus. He has <sup>b</sup>many powerful friends at Rome. The affair has become notorious and is very unpopular. You are mad. <sup>c</sup>If you are not careful



you will be ruined by this one charge." Moved by this <sup>a</sup>warning and by fear, but not by shame, Verres did not dare to condemn Diodorus in his absence.<sup>c</sup> But for nearly three years the latter was deprived of home and province; and all, both Sicilians and Romans, <sup>d</sup>were convinced that there was nothing <sup>36</sup>which any one could keep, <sup>e</sup>if the prætor took a fancy to it.

*a.* Latin, "these (things)." *b.* Latin, "many and powerful." *c.* See Part I sec. 71. *d.* Use connecting relative. *e.* Place in emphatic position. *f.* Latin, "decided." *g.* Latin, "if it was pleasing to," etc.

### EXERCISE XXI

*A.* 1. <sup>121</sup>Shall he, overcome with tears and grief, implore your mercy in vain? 2. By the immortal gods, do not deprive him of all dignity<sup>14</sup> and fortune. 3. There are some <sup>36</sup>who think that the<sup>7</sup> more offices they obtain the<sup>7</sup> more honorable they will be. 4. If Murena has injured no one, if, <sup>117</sup>to say the least, <sup>a</sup>he has given no one cause to hate him either at home or abroad, let there be a place of refuge among you for his <sup>b</sup>modest merit. 5. <sup>c</sup>One who has been robbed of the consulship deserves pity, for <sup>43</sup>if you take away the consulship <sup>d</sup>you take everything. 6. Yet in these times the consulship itself can scarcely excite envy, for it is exposed to the attacks<sup>e</sup> of Catiline. 7. "When I was consul," said Cicero, "I single-handed<sup>f</sup> stood opposed to every danger." 8. Therefore I do not see what there is in this office that one need grudge it to Murena<sup>50</sup> or any one of us.<sup>61</sup> 9. A few days ago Murena saw the image of his illustrious father crowned with laurel. <sup>g</sup>Shall he now behold it robbed of every dignity? 10. If I were Murena, I should not wish to return in disgrace to those regions <sup>127</sup>from which I had recently departed in honor.

*a.* Latin, "he has been for hatred to no one." *b.* Latin, "modesty."  
*c.* Latin, "one deprived of the consulship ought to have pity." *d.* Change  
 to passive. *e.* Latin, "weapons." *f.* *sōlus*. *g.* Cf. first sentence.

*B.* Though Verres said that he had not taken silver plate from Calidius, a Roman knight, but had bought it <sup>12</sup>at a great price; <sup>40</sup>yet his guilt would not have been less, even if he had presented his accounts as evidence. For "why was it, if he sold him the silver <sup>b</sup>of his own will, that Calidius complained at Rome, that, though he had done business in Sicily for many years, Verres was the only one who had robbed him? "Why was it, if Verres had really bought it, that he declared he would demand it back?

*a.* *why was it that* = *quid erat quod* followed by the subjv. *l.* Abl. to express *in accordance with*.

## EXERCISE XXII

*A.* 1. Cicero asked the jury<sup>a</sup> if they thought that Murena ought to go into exile. 2. If he should go into exile, he would not know where<sup>b</sup> to go. 3. If he goes into Cisalpine Gaul, with what feelings will he behold <sup>114</sup>his own brother, to whom, a few days ago, he sent a messenger (to announce) his election? 4. Murena's friends are said to have flocked to Rome <sup>129</sup>to congratulate (him). 5. It would be most foreign to<sup>c</sup> your merciful disposition, if you should convict Murena of bribery.<sup>68</sup> 6. At Lanuvium, <sup>a</sup>a Roman municipal town, there was an ancient temple of Juno, the foundations of which are still standing. 7. All the consuls must needs sacrifice to this goddess <sup>181</sup>before they enter on their magistracy. 8. <sup>55</sup>Provided you acquit Murena of this charge, I promise you that he will be most hostile to this conspiracy which is now weakening the state. 9. There is no one of those who are now seeking the consulship, who, <sup>2</sup>in my

judgment, will be a stronger candidate than yourself. 10. I see that you will be <sup>52</sup>of the greatest advantage to me <sup>e</sup>in winning their good will.

*a.* See Part I sec. 462. *b.* ubi or quō? *c.* Latin, "from." *d.* See Part I sec. 29. *e.* Gerundive of purpose with ad.

*B.* <sup>a</sup>At the time when Sicily <sup>b</sup>was at the height of its power <sup>16</sup>and opulence, it is incredible <sup>120</sup>how many and what beautiful works of art there were in that island. All of these <sup>c</sup>were of ancient workmanship and made with the greatest skill. There was <sup>d</sup>no house, a little richer (than usual), in which these could not be found. Even if there was nothing else, there were cups and bowls of silver, which the women used <sup>e</sup>for sacred purposes. <sup>f</sup>Though fortune had taken many (of them), still many remained <sup>183</sup>until Verres came to Sicily. Now there is not even one.

*a.* Latin, "then when." *b.* Latin, "was flourishing in." *c.* Why not genitive? *d.* Where placed? Cf. Part I sec. 28. N. *e.* ad rēs divīnās. *f.* quae multa cum.

### EXERCISE XXIII

*A.* 1. Now for a long time <sup>78</sup>I have received <sup>a</sup>no letter from you, although I have written you <sup>b</sup>daily concerning my plans. 2. <sup>44</sup>I very much <sup>11</sup>need your speedy presence <sup>c</sup>in Rome, for I see that you will be <sup>52</sup>of the greatest service to me <sup>78</sup>in winning Cæsar's good will. 3. See to it, therefore, that you are in Rome on the first of January as you agreed. 4. But <sup>d</sup>be assured of this, that your old enemies <sup>e</sup>will be much disturbed when you arrive. 5. <sup>5</sup>In nothing am I wont to rejoice so (much) as <sup>5</sup>in the consciousness <sup>f</sup>of doing my duty, even if at times <sup>g</sup>I receive no adequate return. 6. Be assured that Cæsar's letter was pleasing to me, though it contained but scanty indication of his good will towards me. 7. I do not doubt that, if my great zeal for <sup>h</sup>you <sup>i</sup>has failed

to bind you to me, public interest will <sup>j</sup>unite us. 8. That you may not be ignorant of what I desire, I will write frankly as both my nature and our friendship demands. 9. I think you have never read a <sup>k</sup>letter from me before, except written by my own hand. 10. From this you will be able to gather with what <sup>l</sup>cares I am distracted.

*a.* Latin, "nothing of letters." *b.* *ad tē*. *c.* Latin, "arrival." *d.* Latin, "know this," future imperative of *sciō*. *e.* What is the regular periphrasis for the future passive infinitive? *f.* *officium*. *g.* Latin, "it is not replied mutually to them." *h.* Latin, "towards." *i.* Latin, "has bound you to me too little." *j.* Latin, "bind us to each other." Use the first periphrastic. *k.* Latin, "my letter." *l.* Latin, "how great."

*B.* <sup>48</sup>Whenever Verres saw any <sup>61</sup>engraved silver, he could not keep his hands off. Once a certain (man named) Philo gave the prætor a dinner at <sup>a</sup>his villa, and, because he was a Roman citizen, he did that which the Sicilians did not dare (to do); he set before him a bowl on which were beautiful figures. <sup>b</sup>As soon as Verres saw it, he did not <sup>c</sup>hesitate, <sup>2</sup>in the sight of the other guests, to remove it from the table. Afterwards, <sup>42</sup>as if he wished to show himself to be without avarice, he returned the bowl, <sup>2</sup>but with the figures torn off.

*a.* *apud*. *b.* Latin, "he immediately, when he saw," etc. *c.* Cf. Part I sec. 167.

#### EXERCISE XXIV

*A.* 1. <sup>48</sup>Whenever Cicero was absent from Rome, <sup>79</sup>he used to expect a letter from his friend Atticus every day. 2. Once when it had been announced that slaves had come from the city, Cicero <sup>a</sup>called them and asked whether there was any letter.<sup>61</sup> They said no. 3. "What do you say?" said he. "Nothing from Atticus?" Terrified by his words,<sup>b</sup> they confessed that they had received a letter but <sup>c</sup>had lost it on the way. 4. If there was anything <sup>d</sup>especially important in that letter which you dispatched<sup>e</sup> on the 16th of

April, write (again) as soon as possible, that I may not be ignorant of it. 5. I never saw the youth <sup>131</sup>before he came to my house <sup>129</sup>to pay his respects. 6. I shall set out on the first of May that I may be at Antium on the third; for there will be games at Antium from the fourth of May till the sixth. 7. There was no day, when I was at Antium, that<sup>g</sup> I did not know what was being done at Rome even better than those who were there. 8. Your letters show not only what is happening, but also what is going to be. 9. Give that slave, whom I have ordered to hurry back to me immediately, a <sup>h</sup>good long letter, and <sup>i</sup>be sure to let me know the day on which you <sup>j</sup>intend to set out from Rome. 10. Since Cicero had <sup>j</sup>no leisure time and had to walk <sup>k</sup>for exercise, <sup>79</sup>he used to dictate letters <sup>97</sup>while walking.

*a.* Latin, "asked them called." *b.* Latin, "voice." *c.* Latin, "that it was lost." *d.* Latin, "worthy of mention." *e.* Latin, "gave." *f.* Use first periphrastic. *g.* Latin, "on which day." *h.* Latin, "weighty." *i.* Latin, "see to it that I know." *j.* Latin, "nothing of leisure time." *k.* Use *causā* with genitive.

*B.* Cicero says that after Verres had collected a very great number of works of art, so that he had not left even one to any one, he set up a great workshop at Syracuse,<sup>102</sup> and commanded all the best artists to be called together; and that there for eight months no vessel was made except of gold. <sup>a</sup>Who of you has not heard<sup>36</sup> about this workshop, and the golden vessels which were made there out of the spoils (which he had) gathered out of all Sicily? I would not venture to present this, <sup>40</sup>did I not fear that you would say that you had heard more about it from others than from me.

*a.* Latin, "who is there of you that," etc.

## EXERCISE XXV

A. 1. A certain friend of Cicero's had a slave, named<sup>16</sup> Licinius, who ran away. 2. At Athens he lived as a free man (and) <sup>a</sup>from there he went into Asia; <sup>b</sup>while he was living at Ephesus, he was arrested as a runaway. 3. When you are at Ephesus, <sup>109</sup>I would like <sup>c</sup>to have you hunt up the man with the greatest diligence. 4. Bring him along <sup>3</sup>with you and don't consider <sup>64</sup>how much the man is worth, for he is really<sup>d</sup> of little value. 5. Cicero's friend is <sup>e</sup>so grieved because of the slave's rascality, that you can do nothing <sup>f</sup>that would please him more. 6. I don't know what to write you,<sup>g</sup> but when you <sup>h</sup>have arrived, we will discuss the things which will have to be done. 7. <sup>95</sup>Would that I had been less desirous of life! Certainly I should have seen much less of evil. 8. Neither the gods, whom you have worshiped most piously, nor men, whom<sup>49</sup> I have always served, have requited us for the favor. 9. For thirteen days I was at Brundisium at the house of Laenius, an excellent man. 10. <sup>i</sup>And he was not prevented by the penalty of the law <sup>j</sup>from offering me the right of hospitality and friendship.

a. inde. b. Express by participle. c. Latin, "that you hunt up." d. Express this word by placing *little* in an emphatic position. e. Latin, "affected by so much grief." f. Latin, "more pleasing to him." g. Not dative. h. A future perfect in force and so to be expressed. i. and . . . not, neque. j. Cf. Part I sec. 166.

B. <sup>a</sup>How different from Verres in nature was Piso, prætor of Spain! The former<sup>110</sup> did not <sup>b</sup>care for his reputation <sup>55</sup>provided he could steal, the latter wished all Spain to know how much gold<sup>61</sup> he used for<sup>c</sup> a ring. For, having broken his ring while he <sup>78</sup>was exercising in arms,<sup>10</sup> when he wished a new ring to be made<sup>d</sup> he called the goldsmith into the forum to his official<sup>e</sup> chair, and, <sup>2</sup>after giving him

gold, commanded the man to set his chair in the forum and to make the ring <sup>2</sup>in the presence of all.

- a.* Latin, "how much did Piso differ," etc. *b.* Latin, "spare." *c.* *prō*.  
*d.* Latin adds an ethical dative, or dative of advantage, "for himself."  
*e.* That is, *curule*.

#### EXERCISE XXVI

*A. 1.* "I expect to set out from Brundisium on the 30th of April and to <sup>b</sup>go through Macedonia to Cyzicus. 2. <sup>121</sup>Shall I ask you <sup>c</sup>to come, worn out in mind and body? 3. <sup>a</sup>Be assured of this one thing: if I have <sup>c</sup>you, I shall not seem to myself <sup>f</sup>utterly lost. 4. I would have waited for a letter at Brundisium, if I had been permitted by <sup>g</sup>the sailors, who were unwilling to lose <sup>h</sup>the favorable weather. 5. <sup>128</sup>As for what remains, consider that I am moved more by your misery than by my own. 6. My brother, did you fear that I sent slaves to you without a letter <sup>i</sup>because I was angry? 7. I could not be angry with you <sup>49</sup>if I would, and I would not if I could. 8. That lauded consulship of mine <sup>114</sup>has robbed me <sup>54</sup>of children, fatherland, and fortune; <sup>j</sup>I would not wish it to take anything from you. 9. I did not permit my faithful wife to accompany me, that there might be (some one) <sup>86</sup>to protect our children. 10. Since my enemies are very powerful and my friends have deserted me, I have nothing <sup>c</sup>to hope for.

- a.* First periphrastic. *b.* Latin, "seek Cyzicus through," etc. *c.* Not infinitive. *d.* Latin, "know." *e.* Not present. *f.* Latin, "to have plainly perished." *g.* *per*. *h.* Latin, "let pass." *i.* Express by a participial clause. *j.* Latin, "I would wish that it should not have taken." Use *ēripiō* in both clauses.

*B.* In the <sup>a</sup>year 74 B.C. the sons of Antiochus, king of Syria, came to Rome with their mother, <sup>b</sup>in the hope that by the aid of the Romans they might obtain the sovereignty of Egypt, which they thought <sup>c</sup>belonged to their mother.



When they (again) set out for their ancestral kingdom, one of them, who was called Antiochus, wished to make the journey through Sicily, and so he came to Syracuse <sup>2</sup>when Verres was prætor. <sup>a</sup>Verres receives him with great honor and invites him to dinner, but the king soon finds that it would have been better if he had never gone to Sicily or entered the prætor's house.

*a.* Give the date A.U.C. Consult grammar. *b.* Latin, "with this hope that." *c.* *pertinere ad.* *d.* Latin, "him received with the highest honor Verres invites," etc.

## EXERCISE XXVII

*A.* 1. I set out on the 4th of August, on the very day that<sup>a</sup> the law concerning me was proposed. 2. <sup>b</sup>As I journeyed, deputations came to me from every side with congratulations. 3. When I came to the city, there was no one who did not come to meet me, except those enemies who could not conceal 'the fact <sup>d</sup>that they were enemies. 4. Within the walls the steps of the temples, the streets, and the forum were filled with a great multitude which greeted me with loud<sup>e</sup> applause. 5. Modesty has prevented me from saying <sup>2</sup>in your presence these same things which I will write more boldly <sup>2</sup>in your absence. 6. I greatly desire <sup>f</sup>to be praised <sup>10</sup>in your writings, and <sup>109</sup>I wish <sup>g</sup>you to pardon <sup>h</sup>this impatience of mine. 7. Your writings so surpassed my expectations<sup>i</sup> that I desired to enjoy the excellence<sup>17</sup> of your talent as soon as possible. 8. Would you prefer to separate the history of the conspiracy from external wars or not? 9. <sup>67</sup>It is of much importance to me that you do not wait until you come to my consulship. 10. I am not ignorant how shamelessly <sup>j</sup>I am acting in that I demand that you commend me.

*a.* I.e. "on which." *b.* Latin, "I so journeyed that." *c.* *id ipsum.* *d.* Infinitive clause of apposition. *e.* Latin, "the greatest." *f.* Latin,



"myself to be praised." *g.* Not infinitive clause. *h.* Latin, "this my impatience." *i.* Singular. *j.* *faciam quī*.

*B.* The silver and gold which<sup>29</sup> Verres saw on the table when he took dinner "at the house of Antiochus" made such an impression on him that he could think<sup>c</sup> of nothing else except how he might rob the king. He therefore sent (men)<sup>129</sup> to ask for the most beautiful vessels which he had seen at his house, that he might show them, as he said, to his engravers. The king,<sup>34</sup> since he did not know<sup>d</sup> the man, sent them without any suspicion. But when, some days later, he sent men to bring them back, they returned (to him) empty-handed.

*a.* apud. *b.* Latin, "moved him to such a degree." *c.* Latin, "plan." *d.* Latin, "him."

#### EXERCISE XXVIII

*A. 1.* Perhaps my exploits do not seem to you to be "worthy of honor, but I ask that you praise me none the less. 2. You would break<sup>b</sup> the laws of history, if you should be moved<sup>c</sup> by personal regard more than the truth allows. 3. If you<sup>50</sup> can be persuaded<sup>118</sup> to undertake this, I will thank you<sup>d</sup> most heartily. 4. Cicero thought the conspiracy ought to be treated<sup>e</sup> somewhat freely in writing, because nothing was better adapted to the delight of the reader. 5. It often happens that things not desirable in experience<sup>74</sup> are pleasant<sup>f</sup> to read<sup>74</sup> or tell about. 6. Although you may have passed through<sup>17</sup> no dangers of your own, yet the very pity<sup>60</sup> for the calamities of others is a source of pleasure. 7. If I do not obtain this request from you, that is, if something shall hinder you, I shall be compelled to write about myself. 8. There are some<sup>g</sup> who criticise (this) and say that it ought not to be done. Yet I should be following the example of<sup>h</sup> many eminent men. 9. They<sup>i</sup> must needs write about themselves more modestly, if anything is to be praised, and

leave out 'what is to be blamed. 10. There is the added fact also that there is less 'confidence in what is said, and less authority.

*a.* What case follows *dignus*? *b.* Latin, "neglect." *c.* *flectō*. *d.* Latin, "greatest." *e.* Express by the comparative. *f.* Latin, "in reading or telling." *g.* Latin, "many and eminent." *h.* Use *necesse est*. *i.* Latin, "if anything is to be blamed." *j.* Latin, "faith."

*B.* Segesta is a very ancient town in Sicily, which, they affirm, was founded by Æneas <sup>100</sup> when he was fleeing from Troy and seeking a new city. Therefore the Segestans think that they are connected with the Roman people not only by friendship but also by relationship. <sup>187</sup> Many years ago, when this town was waging war <sup>3</sup> with the Carthaginians, it was captured by storm and destroyed, and all things that could be <sup>52</sup> an ornament to the city were deported from that place to Carthage. Among these was a statue of Diana, <sup>15</sup> made of bronze, and perfected with matchless skill.

#### EXERCISE XXIX

*A.* 1. When the heralds "at the games place the crowns upon the victors," <sup>47</sup> they proclaim their names in a loud <sup>6</sup> voice. 2. When, before the close of the games, they themselves are presented with a crown, they summon another herald that they may not announce themselves as victors with their own voice. 3. Concerning these matters, <sup>109</sup> I would like to have you reply <sup>113</sup> to me what you 'intend to do. 4. If weakness of body prevented you from coming to the games, I attribute it more to fortune than to your wisdom. 5. You might <sup>d</sup> have enjoyed your leisure wonderfully if you had been left alone. 6. Pompey dedicated his splendid theater in the Campus Martius in the year '55 B.C. 7. <sup>121</sup> Why should I tell you the rest? For you know what games are, and I doubt

not <sup>f</sup>that you were well satisfied to be deprived of them.  
 8. Provided you were reading something better<sup>g</sup> than my orations, you had not a little more enjoyment<sup>61</sup> than any of us. 9. <sup>66</sup>I am weary of my art, when I am compelled to defend those <sup>97</sup>who have not deserved well of<sup>h</sup> me, at the request of those that have.<sup>i</sup> 10. I bear your absence with a more contented heart, because, if you were at Rome, I should not be permitted to enjoy your society on account of my troublesome occupations.

*a.* Latin, "of the games." *b.* Latin, "great." *c.* First periphrastic.  
*d.* Use licet. *e.* Express as a Roman date. *f.* Latin, "that you were deprived of them with a very contented mind". *g.* potius. *h.* dē. *i.* Add in Latin "deserved well."

*B.* After the "statue of Diana had been transferred from Segesta to Carthage, it retained its former sanctity; for, on account of its remarkable beauty, it seemed, even to the enemy, worthy of being worshiped. Many years later Scipio took Carthage; and, because he knew that Sicily had been most frequently ravaged by the Carthaginians, <sup>b</sup>he called the Sicilians together and promised them 'that he would take great pains to restore to each state what had belonged to it. At that time this very Diana, concerning which we are speaking, was returned to the Segestans. It was carried back to Segesta and was replaced on its ancient site<sup>d</sup> to<sup>e</sup> the great joy of the citizens.

*a.* Place first. Why? *b.* Latin, "to the Sicilians called together he promised," etc. *c.* Latin, "that it would be for a great care to him that all things should be restored to the states, which had been of each."  
*d.* Plural in Latin. *e.* Latin, "with."

### EXERCISE XXX

*A.* 1. If you will <sup>a</sup>come and see me, I will teach you<sup>b</sup> — who <sup>78</sup>have tried to do nothing else for many years — what

it is to live like a human being. 2. I have written you this with 'more words than usual, not because of my abundance of leisure, but because of love for<sup>a</sup> you. 3. Don't you remember that you asked me 'to write you something of this sort, 'that you might have less regret for having missed the games? 4. When I was talking about this very thing at my house, your<sup>e</sup> letter was given to me. 5. Shall I make him<sup>h</sup> king of Gaul or do you recommend another? 6. When you asked me to send you some one whom you might honor, it seemed providential. 7. I therefore send you Trebatius, than whom<sup>6</sup> no better man can be found; and I hope that you will receive him<sup>i</sup> with your (usual) kindness, for he is worthy of friendship.<sup>8</sup> 8. While you are in Britain, Trebatius, beware lest you be captured by the wild charioteers. 9. I am wont to wonder at this: that I do not receive 'letters from you as often as I do from my brother. 10. I hear that there is no<sup>k</sup> silver<sup>61</sup> or gold in Britain. If that is true, I advise you to hasten home as soon as possible.

*a.* I.e. "visit." *b.* Emphasize by adding *ipse*. *c.* Express "more than usual" by the comparative degree. *d.* *ergā*. *e.* Infinitive? *f.* Latin, "that it might repent you the less to have missed." *g.* Latin, "from you." *h.* Make emphatic by position. *i.* A connecting relative. *j.* Latin, "your letters, as often as they are brought." *k.* Latin, "nothing."

*B.* Cicero had himself perceived in what honor the statue of Diana was held, when, a few years before, he <sup>a</sup>had gone there as *quæstor*. Then, although the Segestans had many works of art which were an ornament to the city, yet <sup>b</sup>this was the first thing they showed him. It had been set on a very lofty base on which was cut in large letters the name of Publius Africanus, and that he had restored it after taking Carthage. It was a very large statue with a flowing robe; arrows hung from the shoulder of the goddess, in her left hand she held a bow and in her right a burning torch.

When Verres saw it,<sup>c</sup> he commanded the magistrates to take it down and give it to him.

*a.* Latin, "was there as quæstor." *b.* Latin, "nothing was shown to him by them sooner." *c.* A connecting relative.

### EXERCISE XXXI

*A.* 1. Cæsar did not wish <sup>a</sup>to leave Britain before he reduced the island to a province. 2. I should like to know what you are doing and whether you <sup>b</sup>expect to come to Italy this winter. 3. There are some who say that you will be rich. I will see later whether <sup>c</sup>they speak the truth or not. 4. The philosophers say that all are rich who can enjoy the heaven and the earth. 5. They accuse <sup>d</sup>you of pride, because they say that you do not reply to them <sup>e</sup>when they make inquiries. 6. <sup>f</sup>All agree that no one at Rome is more skilled in the law<sup>57</sup> than yourself. 7. If you had gone to Britain too, surely no one in that great island would have been more skilled than yourself. 8. I envy you because you have been summoned by that man whom others cannot approach. 9. Trebatius was very fond of writing letters, and, while he was in Gaul with<sup>g</sup> Cæsar's army, <sup>h</sup>sent many to his friends at Rome. 10. After Cicero<sup>i</sup> had been in his province only a few months, great longing for the city<sup>60</sup> seized him.

*a.* Latin, "to set out from." *b.* First periphrastic. *c.* Latin, "it has been spoken truly." *d.* Latin, "your pride." *e.* Express by participle. *f.* Latin, "it is agreed among all." *g.* *apud*. *h.* The Latin for "to send a letter to some one" is *epistolam ad aliquem dare*. *i.* Place first. Why?

*B.* Verres could not persuade the magistrates to give him the statue; and later, when the matter was discussed in the senate, all expressed the opinion that it could not be done, that they were bound both by the highest religious scruples and by their laws. Then he imposed burdens on the citizens, more than they could bear, and threatened that he

"would ruin the whole state, until finally they were so overcome by misfortunes<sup>b</sup> and fears that they decided that the command<sup>50</sup> of the prætor must be obeyed; but no one was found among the Segestans, 'either freeman or slave or citizen or foreigner, who dared to touch that statue.

*a.* Latin, "would be for ruin to." *b.* Latin, "evils." *c.* Latin, "neither . . . nor."

## EXERCISE XXXII

*A.* 1. I should like to have you write me as carefully <sup>a</sup>as possible about the whole state of public affairs, for I shall consider those things which I learn<sup>b</sup> from you as most certain. 2. Although <sup>67</sup>it is of great importance to our honor that I go to the city as soon as possible, yet I seem to have done wrong <sup>34</sup>in that I departed from you. 3. I approved of your plan not to sail before you recovered. 4. If, however, after you have taken food, you seem to yourself able to follow me, come quickly. 5. I sent you a slave 'with orders either to come with you to me as soon as possible, or, if you delayed, to return to me immediately. 6. If you perceive that it is necessary to delay at Athens for the sake of recovering your health, do not follow me. 7. If you do that which will most benefit your health, you will most nearly obey my wish. 8. When all had been asked their opinion, I, being asked mine, thanked Cæsar with many words. 9. If you will see to restoring<sup>98</sup> my slave who has run away, I cannot tell you "how grateful I shall be. 10. He stole 'a number of books before he ran away, and now I hear that the fellow is in your province.

*a.* Express by *quam* with the superlative. *b.* Fut. perf. *c.* Participle, "ordered." *d.* Latin, "how pleasing it will be to me." How is future time expressed in an indirect question? *e.* I.e. "many."

*B.* Since <sup>50</sup>no one among the Segestans could be persuaded to touch the statue, certain barbarians, ignorant of

the whole matter, were brought from Lilybæum, and these took it down. After the statue was removed, Verres thought that "the people would forget the whole business, if he should remove the empty base also, (which stood) as<sup>b</sup> a witness of his crime. And so, by his command, the base was taken away; 'but by this act it seemed to all that Verres "had done violence not only to religion, but also to the memory of Scipio, whose exploits and valor were commemorated by this monument.

*a.* Latin, "men would come into forgetfulness of." *b.* *tamquam*.  
*c.* *quō quidem factō*. *d.* I.e. "had violated."

### EXERCISE XXXIII

*A.* 1. After "word had been brought to me concerning the death of your daughter Tullia, I took it much to heart. 2. If I had been present, I would not have failed you and I would have expressed my grief to you in person. 3. Your friends, who are themselves affected with equal sorrow, seem more<sup>b</sup> in need of consolation than able to offer it to others. 4. These things I write you, not because I think you ignorant (of them), but because, perhaps, you perceive them less (clearly) 'on account of grief. 5. Consider after what manner fortune has dealt<sup>c</sup> with us up to this time. 6. The things which have been taken away from us ought to be no less dear to men than their children. 7. What was there at this time that could greatly 'attract her to life? 8. Returning from Asia, when I was sailing 'from Ægina to Megara, I saw the ruins of many cities, which, a few years before, had been most flourishing. 9. <sup>41</sup>If your daughter had not<sup>e</sup> met her death at this time, she<sup>46</sup> would nevertheless have had to die a few years later, since she was born mortal.<sup>h</sup> 10. There is no grief which length of time does not lessen and soften.



*a.* Latin, "it was announced to me." *b.* Latin, "to need." *c.* Latin, "hindered by." *d.* Latin, "done." *e.* Latin, "invite her for living." *f.* Construe "Aegina" as the name of a country, "Megara" as the name of a town. *g.* Latin says "to meet her day," *obire suum diem.* *h.* *homō.*

*B.* While he was at Rome Cicero <sup>a</sup>had been informed that the Syracusans were friendly to Verres, and so, when he came to Syracuse, he expected no aid<sup>61</sup> from them either publicly or privately, and <sup>b</sup>spent his time with the Roman citizens at that place. But unexpectedly Heraclius, a distinguished man, came to him, and said that he had come, at the command of the senate, to ask him and his brother to come to the senate-house. At first <sup>c</sup>they were in doubt what to do; but they quickly decided that that meeting and place ought not to be avoided by them. When they entered the senate-house, the senators rose to salute them.

*a.* Latin, "had been made more certain." *b.* Latin, "was with." *c.* Latin, "it was doubtful to them."

#### EXERCISE XXXIV

*A.* 1. Don't forget that you are Cicero, and that you are a man who <sup>a</sup>is wont to give advice to others. 2. Do not imitate poor doctors, who, <sup>b</sup>when others are sick, profess to have a knowledge of medicine, but cannot cure themselves. 3. I am ashamed to write more to you on this subject, therefore I will <sup>c</sup>close. 4. On the 23d of May I met Marcellus of Athens, and spent that day there that I might be with him. 5. <sup>a</sup>Two days after, when I had it in mind to set out from Athens, a friend of his came to me about the tenth hour of the night. 6. He announced to me that Marcellus had received two wounds, one in the body, the other in the head; yet, that he hoped he could live. 7. He said that he had been sent to me by Marcellus to announce this and to ask that I send him<sup>68</sup> doctors. 8. I set out with doctors <sup>c</sup>at



daybreak, but when I was not far away a boy met me with a letter in which <sup>c</sup>it was stated that Marcellus had <sup>e</sup>met his fate a little before light. 9. The slaves had fled, greatly terrified because their master had been killed. 10. I saw to giving him a respectable <sup>h</sup>funeral before I departed from the city.

*a.* In Latin the verb will be in the second person, as the relative agrees in person with "you." *b.* Latin, "in the diseases of others." *c.* Latin, "make an end of writing." *d.* Latin, "after the third day of that day." *e.* Latin, "at the first light." *f.* Latin, "it had been written." *g.* See Exercise XXXIII. *A*, note *g*. *h.* Latin, "sufficiently large."

*B.* After Cicero and his brother were seated, one of the senators, who seemed to surpass the others in age and authority, said that the senate and people of Syracuse took it ill <sup>85</sup>that Cicero, when he had used letters and testimony from all the other states of Sicily, had done nothing <sup>a</sup>of the kind in that state. Cicero replied that ambassadors from the Syracusans were not present at Rome, in that meeting of the Sicilians when his <sup>b</sup>assistance was asked, and that he could not demand that <sup>c</sup>any decree should be passed against Verres in that senate-house where he saw (standing) a statue of Verres.

*a.* *ēius modi.* *b.* Latin, "from him." *c.* Latin, "anything should be decreed against."

## VOCABULARY TO PART III

NOTE. — When more than one Latin equivalent is given, consult the list of synonyms (p. 173). If the words are not listed there, the differences in meaning are of minor importance.

### A

**a** (an), generally not translated.  
**ability, talent, ingenium**, -ī, N.  
**able**, see **can**.  
**about**, adv. *circiter*.  
**about**, prep. see **concerning**.  
**abroad, in military service, militae**, loc. case.  
**absence, absentia**, -ae, F.  
**absent**, a. *absēns*, -entis.  
**absent: be** —, *absum*, *abesse*, *āfuī*, *āfutūrus*.  
**abundance, abundantia**, -ae, F.  
**accompany, prōsequor**, 3, -secūtus.  
**accomplish, perficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectus.  
**according to, ē, ex**, prep. with the abl.  
**account, n. tabula**, -ae, F.  
**account: give an** —, *explicō*, I.  
**accusation, accūsātiō**, -nis, F.  
**accuse, accūsō**, I.  
**accuser, accūsātor**, -ōris, M.  
**acquire, adipīscor**, 3, *adeptus*; *parō*, I.  
**acquit, liberō**, I.  
**act, deed, factum**, -ī, N.

**adapted**, see **suited**.  
**add, addō**, 3, -didī, -ditus; **be added, accēdō**, 3, -cessī, -cessus.  
**admit, concede, concēdō**, 3, -cessī, -cessus.  
**advance, prōficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectus.  
**advantage, ūsus, -ūs**, M.  
**advice: give** —, *praecepīō*, 3, -cepī, -ceptus.  
**advocate, n. patrōnus**, -ī, M.  
**aedile, aedilis**, -is, M.  
**Aegina, Aegīna**, -ae, F.  
**Aeneas, Aenēās**, -ae, M.  
**affect, afficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectus.  
**affirm, adfirmō**, I.  
**Africa, Āfrica**, -ae, F.  
**Africanus, Āfricānus**, -ī, M.  
**after, post**, prep. (with the acc.) and adv.; conj. *postquam*.  
**after what manner, quem ad modum**.  
**afterwards, postea, post**.  
**against, contrā, in**, preps. with the acc.  
**age, aetās, -tātis**, F.  
**agitate, agitō**, I.  
**agitation, agitātiō**, -nis, F.  
**ago, adv. abhinc**.

- agree, *fix*, decide, *cōstituō*, 3, -*stituī*, -*stitutus*.
- agreed: be —, be established, *cōnstat*, 1, *cōnstitit*, *cōnstatūrum*.
- aid, n. *adiūmentum*, -ī, N.; *auxilium*, -ī, N.
- alarmed: greatly —, *perterritus*, -a, -um.
- alive, living, *vīvus*, -a, -um.
- all, *omnis*, -e; *tōtus*, -a, -um.
- alliance, *societās*, -tātis, F.
- allot, *dēferō*, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus.
- allow, see admit.
- allowed: be —, *licet*, 2, *licuit*, *licitum est*.
- ally, n. *socius*, -ī, M.
- alone, *sōlus*, -a, -um; adv. *sōlum*.
- already, *iam*.
- also, *etiam*, *quoque*.
- although, *cum*, *quamquam*, *licet*, etc. Often expressed by a participle.
- always, *semper*, *numquam nōn*.
- ambassador, *lēgātus*, -ī, M.
- ambition, *ambitiō*, -nis, F.
- ambitious, *ambitiōsus*, -a, -um.
- among, *inter*, *apud*, preps. with the acc.; *in*, prep. with the abl.
- ancestors, *māiōrēs*, -um, M.
- ancestral, *patrius*, -a, -um.
- ancient, *antīquus*, -a, -um; *vetus*, -eris; very ancient, *perantīquus*, -a, -um; *pervetus*, -eris.
- and, *atque* or *ac*; *et*; *que*.
- and so, *itaque*.
- anger, *īrācundiā*, -ae, F.
- angry: be —, *īrāscor*, 3, *īrātus*.
- Anio, *Aniō*, -ēnis, M.
- announce, *nūntiō*, 1; *praedicō*, 1.
- Antiochus, *Antiochus*, -ī, M.
- Antium, *Antium*, -ī, N.
- any, *ūllus*, -a, -um.
- any one, *quisquam*; anything, *quidquam*. Also *quis*, *quid*.
- Apollonius, *Apollōnius*, -ī, M.
- apparent, *apertus*, -a, -um; *perspicuus*, -a, -um.
- appear, *appāreō*, 2, -uī, -itūrus.
- applause, *plausus*, -ūs, M.
- approach, n. *aditus*, -ūs, M.
- approach, v. *adeō*, 4, -ī, -itus.
- approve, *approbō*, 1.
- armed men, *armātī*, -ōrum, M.
- arms, *arma*, -ōrum, N.
- army, *exercitus*, -ūs, M.
- aroused, *commōtus*, -a, -um.
- arrest, *comprehendō*, 3, -hendī, -hēnsus.
- arrival, *adventus*, -ūs, M.
- arrive, *pervenīō*, 4, -vēnī, -ventus.
- arrogance, *adrogantia*, -ae, F.
- arrogant, *superbus*, -a, -um.
- arrow, *sagitta*, -ae, F.
- art, *ars*, -tis, F.; work of art, *artificium*, -ī, N.
- artist, *artifex*, -icis, M. and F.
- as, *prō*, prep. with the abl.; adv. *ut*; as possible, *quam* with the superl.
- as if, *ac sī*, *quasi*, *quam sī*, etc.; sometimes *nōn secus ac sī*, not otherwise than if.
- as much as, *tantum . . . quantum*.
- as often as, *totiēns . . . quotiēns*.
- as soon as, *simul atque*.
- as soon as possible, *quam primum*.
- ashamed: be —, *pudet*, 2, *puduit* or *puditum est*.
- Asia, *Asia*, -ae, F.
- Asiatic, *Asiāticus*, -a, -um.

**Asiaticus, Asiāticus, -ī, M.**

**ask, rogō, 1; quaerō, 3, -sivī, -sītus; petō, 3, -ivī (-iī), -ītus; orō, 1.**

**assassin, sicārius, -ī, M.**

**assist, adiuvō, 1, -iūvī, -iūtus.**

**assistance, adiūmentum, -ī, N.; auxiliū, -ī, N.**

**assistant, adiutor, -ōris, M.**

**assume, adsūmō, 3, -sūmpsi, -sūmp-**

**tus.**

**at, usually expressed by the loca-**

**tive or the abl.; at the house**

**of, apud, prep. with the acc.**

**at all, omnīnō.**

**at the least, saltem.**

**at the time, tum.**

**at times, sometimes, quandō.**

**Athenians, Athēniēnsēs, -ium, M.**

**OR F.**

**Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, F.**

**attack, n. impetus, -ūs, M.**

**attack, v. impetum facere.**

**attend upon, escort, sector, 1.**

**attract, invītō, 1.**

**attribute, tribuō, 3, -uī, -ūtus.**

**August: of —, Sextilis, -e.**

**authority, auctōritās, -tātis, F.; imperium, -ī, N.**

**avarice, avāritia, -ae, F.**

**Aventine, Aventinus, -ī, M.**

**avert, depellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsus.**

**avoid, vitō, 1.**

**away: be —, be distant, see**

**absent.**

## B

**band, manus, -ūs, F.**

**banquet, see meal.**

**barbarian, barbarus, -ī, M.**

**barbarous, barbarus, -a, -um.**

**barrier, claustrum, -trī, N.**

**base, a. turpis, -e.**

**base, n. basis, -is, F.**

**Basiliscus, Basiliscus, -ī, M.**

**battle, proelium, -ī, N.; line of**

**battle, aciēs, -ēī, F.**

**be, sum, esse, fui, futūrus; be**

**away, absūm; be present, ad-**

**sum; be different, interūm; be**

**wanting, dēsūm.**

**bear, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.**

**beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.**

**beauty, venustās, -tātis, F.; pul-**

**chritūdō, -inis, F.**

**because, quod, quia, quoniam.**

**because of, causā or grātiā with**

**the gen.; propter, prep. with the**

**acc.**

**become, fiō, fieri, factus.**

**become still, conticēscō, 3, -ticui, —.**

**before, adv. ante, prius; before,**

**prep. ante with the acc.; before,**

**conj. priusquam, antequam; in**

**the presence of, apud, prep. with**

**the acc.**

**beg, see ask.**

**begin, ineō, 4, -iī, -ītus; ordior,**

**4, orsus; instituō, 3, -stitui,**

**-stitūtus; incipiō, 3, -cēpi,**

**-ceptus.**

**behold, aspiciō, 3, -spexī, -spectus;**

**inspectō, 1.**

**believe, crēdō, 3, -didī, -ditus.**

**belong to, esse with pred. gen.**

**benefit, profit, conducō, 3, -dūxī,**

**-ductus.**

**beseech, obsecrō, 1.**

**bestow, tribuō, 3, -uī, -ūtus.**

**betake one's self, mēcōnferō, -ferre.**

**-tulī, -lātus.**

betray, *trādō*, 3, *-didī*, *-ditus*.  
 better, adv. *melius*, *rectius*.  
 beware, *caveō*, 2, *cāvī*, *cautus* ;  
*videō*, 2, *vidī*, *vīsus*.  
 beyond all others, *potissimum*.  
 bind, accept, adopt, *asciscō*, 3,  
*-scīvī*, *-scītus*. See also hold.  
 birth, *genus*, *-eris*, N.  
 bitter, *acerbus*, *-a*, *-um*.  
 blame, v. *reprehendō*, 3, *-endī*,  
*-ēnsus*.  
 body, *corpus*, *-oris*, N.  
 body of men, order, *ordō*, *-inis*, M.  
 body-guard, *praesidium*, *-ī*, N.  
 boldly, *audācter*.  
 boldness, *audācia*, *-ae*, F.  
 booty, *praeda*, *-ae*, F.  
 born : be —, *nāscor*, 3, *nātus*.  
 bow, *arcus*, *-ūs*, M.  
 bowl, *patra*, *-ae*, F.  
 brave, *fortis*, *-e*.  
 break, *frangō*, 3, *frēgī*, *fractus*.  
 break down, *refringō*, 3, *-frēgī*,  
*-fractus*.  
 break out, *erumpō*, 3, *-rūpī*, *-ruptus*.  
 breastplate, *lōrica*, *-ae*, F.  
 breath, *aura*, *-ae*, F.  
 bribery, *largitiō*, *-nis*, F. ; *ambitus*,  
*-ūs*, M.  
 bring along, conduct, *dēducō*, 3,  
*-dūxī*, *-ductus*.  
 bring back, *referō*, *-ferre*, *rettulī*,  
*-lātus*.  
 bring to, *adferō*, *adferre*, *attulī*,  
*adlātus* (all-) ; also *dēferō*.  
 Britain, *Britannia*, *-ae*, F.  
 bronze, *aes*, *aeris*, N.  
 bronze : of —, *aēneus*, *-a*, *-um*.  
 brother, *frāter*, *-tris*, M.  
 Brundisium, *Brundisium*, *-ī*, N.

burden, civic duty, *mūnus*, *-eris*,  
 N. ; *onus*, *oneris*, N.  
 burial, *sepultūra*, *-ae*, F.  
 burning, *ardēns*, *-entis*. [*-ruptus*  
 burst forth, *prōrumpō*, 3, *-rūpī*,  
 business, *negōtium*, *-ī*, N.  
 but, *autem* (postpositive) ; *vērūm* ;  
*sed*, the usual word ; *at*, emphatic,  
 in argument or transition.  
 buy, *emō*, 3, *ēmī*, *ēemptus*.  
 by, of a person, *ā* or *ab* with the  
 abl. ; otherwise abl. without prep.

## C

C. = Gaius, *Gāius*, *-ī*, M.  
 Caelius, *Caelius*, *-ī*, M.  
 Caesar, *Caesar*, *-aris*, M.  
 calamity, *cāsus*, *-ūs*, M.  
 Calidius, *Calidius*, *-ī*, M.  
 call, *appellō*, 1 ; *nōminō*, 1 ; *vocō*, 1.  
 call together, *convocō*, 1.  
 camp, *castra*, *-ōrum*, N.  
 campus, *campus*, *-ī*, M.  
 can, able, *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*, —.  
 candidate, *candidātus*, *-ī*, M.  
 canvass, n. *petitiō*, *-nis*, F.  
 capital, a. *capitālis*, *-e* ; a capital  
 charge, *rēs capitālis*.  
 capture, see take.  
 care, n. *cūra*, *-ae*, F.  
 careful, *diligēns*, *-entis*.  
 careful : be —, look out, *caveō*, 2,  
*cāvī*, *cautus*.  
 carelessly, *neglegenter*.  
 carry, *portō*, 1 ; carry back, *reportō*.  
 Carthage, *Karthāgō*, *-inis*, F.  
 Carthaginians, *Poenī*, *-ōrum*, M.  
 case, cause, *causa*, *-ae*, F.  
 cast down, cast from, disappoint,  
*dēiciō*, 3, *-iēcī*, *-iectus*.

catch, see surprise.

Catiline, *Catilīna*, -ae, M.

Cato, *Catō*, -nis, M.

cause, see case.

censure, see blame.

certain, *certus*, -a, -um.

certain one, *quīdam*, *quaedam*, *quoddam*.

certainly, *certē*.

chair, *sella*, -ae, F.; official chair, *sella curūlis*.

change, v. *commūtō*, I; *mūtō*, I.

chapel, *sacrārium*, -ī, N.

character, plur. of *mōs*, *mōris*, M.

charge, n. *crīmen*, *crīminis*, N.

charioteer, *essedārius*, -ī, M.

chief, *prīnceps*, -cipis, M. or as adj.

children, *liberī*, -ōrum, M.

choose, *dēligō*, 3, -lēgī, -lēctus.

Cicero, *Cicerō*, -ōnis, M.

Cilicia, *Cilicia*, -ae, F.

Cisalpine, *Cisalpinus*, -a, -um.

citizen, *cīvis*, -is, M. and F.

city, *urbs*, *urbis*, F.; *cīvitās*, -tātis, F.

civil, *cīvilis*, -e.

civil authority, *potestās*, -tātis, F.

class, kind, *genus*, -eris, N.

Claudius, *Claudius*, -ī, M.

clear: be —, be established, *cōnstat*, I, impers.

client, *cōnsultor*, -ōris, M.

close, n. *missiō*, -nis, F.

coast, region, *ōra*, -ae, F.

coast by, sail around, *circumvehor*, 3, -vectus.

coast-region, *ōra*, -ae, F.

cognomen, *cōgnōmen*, -minis, N.

colleague, *colēga*, -ae, M.

collect, *colligō*, 3, -lēgī, -lēctus.

come, *veniō*, 4, *vēnī*, *ventus*; come to meet, *obviam veniō*.

coming, arrival, *adventus*, -ūs, M.

comitia, *comitia*, -ōrum, N.

command, n. *imperium*, -ī, N.; at the command, *iussū*.

command, v. *imperō*, I; *iubeō*, 2, *iussī*, *iussus*; *mandō*, I.

commemorate, *celebrō*, I.

commend, *ōrnō*, I.

commit (of a crime), *ēdō*, 3, -didī, -ditus; *committō*, 3, -misī, -missus.

common, general, *communis*, -e.

common, mean, inferior, *tenuis*, -e.

common people, *plēbs*, -bis, F.

compel, *cōgō*, 3, *cōēgī*, *cōactus*.

complain, *queror*, 3, *questus*.

conceal, *cēlō*, I.

concerned: be —, have to do with, *versor*, I.

concerning, *dē*, prep. with the abl.

condemn, *condemnō*, I.

condition, *condiciō*, -nis, F.

conduct, *dēducō*, 3, -dūxī, -ductus.

conduct one's self, *versor*, I.

confess, *cōnfiteor*, 2, *cōnfessus*.

congratulate, *grātulor*, I.

congratulations, *grātulātiō*, -nis, F.

connect, *coniungō*, 3, -iūnxī, -iūnc-tus.

consciousness, *cōnscientia*, -ae, F.

consider, *existimō*, I; *cōsiderō*, I; *arbitror*, I; *cōgitō*, I.

consolation, *cōsōlātiō*, -nis, F.

conspiracy, *coniūrātiō*, -nis, F.

consul, *cōnsul*, -is, M.; consul elect, *cōnsul dēsignātus*.

consular, of the consulship, *cōnsulāris*, -e.

consulship, *cōnsulātus*, -ūs, M.

contagion, *contāgiō*, -nis, F.  
 contented, *aequus*, -a, -um.  
 contrary to, *contrā*, prep. with acc.  
 contribute, *adferō*, -ferre, *attulī*,  
 -lātus.  
 control, n. *diciō*, -nis, F.; to bring  
 under control, *facere diciōnis*.  
 convenient, *opportūnus*, -a, -um.  
 convict, v. *damnō*, I.  
 corrupt, a. *corruptus*, -a, -um.  
 corrupt, v. *corrumpō*, 3, -rūpī,  
 -ruptus.  
 Cotta, *Cotta*, -ae, M.  
 countenance, *vultus*, -ūs, M.  
 course of action, *ratio*, -nis, F.  
 courteous, *commodus*, -a, -um.  
 courtesy, *commoditās*, -tātis, F.  
 crime, *scelus*, -eris, N.; *crimen*,  
 -inis, N.  
 criticise, see blame.  
 cross, *crux*, *crucis*, F.  
 crowded, full, *frequēns*, -entis.  
 crown, n. *corōna*, -ae, F.  
 cruel, *asper*, -era, -erum.  
 cruelty, *crūdēlitās*, -tātis, F.  
 crush, *opprimō*, 3, -pressī, -pressus.  
 culture, *hūmānitās*, -tātis, F.  
 cup, *pōculum*, -ī, N.  
 Cupid, *Cupīdō*, -inis, M.  
 cure, see care.  
 curse, bane, *pestis*, -is, F.  
 custom, *mōs*, *mōris*, M.  
 cut in, incise, *incīdō*, 3, -cīdī, -cīsus.  
 Cyzicenes, *Cyzicēnī*, -ōrum, M.  
 Cyzicus, *Cyzicus*, -ī, F.

## D

daily, a. *cotidiānus*, -a, -um.  
 daily, adv. *cotidiē*.  
 dancing, n. *saltātiō*, -nis, F.

danger, *perīculum*, -ī, N.  
 dare, *audeō*, 2, *ausus*.  
 daughter, *filia*, -ae, F.  
 day, *diēs*, -ēī, M. or F.  
 day before, *prīdiē*.  
 deal, treat, *agō*, 3, *ēgī*, *actus*.  
 dear, *cārus*, -a, -um.  
 death, *mors*, *mortis*, F.  
 debt, *aes aliēnum*, *aeris aliēnī*, N.  
 deceive, betray, *fallō*, 3, *fefellī*,  
*falsus*.  
 decide, *statuō*, 3, -uī, -ūtus; *cōn-*  
*stituō*, 3, -uī, -ūtus; *cēseō*, 2,  
*-suī*, -sus.  
 declare, *dēclārō*, I. See also affirm.  
 decorate, adorn, *ōrnō*, I.  
 decree, resolve, v. *dēcernō*, 3, -crēvī,  
 -crētus.  
 decree of the senate, *senātūs cōn-*  
*sultum*, -ī, N.  
 defend, *dēfendō*, 3, *fendī*, -fēnsus.  
 See also protect.  
 defendant, *reus*, -ī, M.  
 defender, *dēfēnsor*, -ōris, M.  
 defense, *dēfēnsiō*, -nis, F.  
 delay, *moror*, I.  
 delight, n. *dēlectātiō*, -nis, F.  
 delight, v. *dēlectō*, I.  
 deliver, set free, *liberō*, I; *eripīō*,  
 3, -ripuī, -reptus.  
 deliver (an oration), *habeō*, 2.  
 deliver over, *trādō*, 3, -didī, -ditus.  
 demand, *pōstulō*, I; *pōscō*, 3,  
*pōpōscī*, —.  
 demand back, *repetō*, 3, -vī (-īī),  
 -ītus.  
 deny, *negō*, I.  
 depart, *discēdō*, 3, -cessī, -cessus.  
 depending, relying on, *frētus*, -a,  
 -um.



deport, *dēportō*, I.  
 depose, thrust down, *dēturbō*, I.  
 deprive, take from, *ēripiō*, 3, *-ripiū*,  
*-reptus*; *privō*, I.  
 deprived: be —, be without,  
*careō*, 2, *-uī*, *-itūrus*.  
 deputations, see ambassadors.  
 descend, *dēscendō*, 3, *-scendī*, *-scēn-*  
*sus*.  
 desert, *dēserō*, 3, *-uī*, *-tus*. See  
 also leave.  
 deserve, *mereor*, 2.  
 design, see plan.  
 desirable, *optābilis*, -e.  
 desire, n. *cupiditās*, -tātis, F.  
 desire, v. *cupiō*, 3, *-ivī*, *-ītus*.  
 desirous, *cupidus*, -a, -um; *studi-*  
*ōsus*, -a, -um.  
 despair, n. *dēspērātiō*, -nis, F.  
 despise, *contemnō*, 3, *-tempſī*, *-temp-*  
*tus*.  
 destroy, *dēleō*, 2, *-ēvī*, *-ētus*.  
 devoted to, *studiōsus*, -a, -um.  
 Diana, *Diāna*, -ae, F.  
 dictate, *dictō*, I.  
 die, *moriōr*, 3, *mortuus*.  
 differ, *interest*, -esse, -fuit; *differō*,  
*-ferre*, *distulī*, *dilātus*.  
 different, *distīnctus*, -a, -um.  
 dignity, *dignitās*, -tātis, F.  
 diligence, *diligentia*, -ae, F.  
 dine, take dinner, *cēnō*, I.  
 dining-couch, *triclinium*, -ī, N.  
 dining-room, *triclinium*, -ī, N.  
 dinner, *cēna*, -ae, F.  
 Diodorus, *Diodōrus*, -ī, M.  
 disastrous, *calamitōsus*, -a, -um.  
 discuss, *agō*, 3, *ēgī*, *āctus*.  
 disembark, *expōnō*, 3, *-posuī*, *-posi-*  
*tus*.

disgrace, n. *ignōminia*, -ae, F.  
 dissension, *dissēnsiō*, -nis, F.  
 distinction, *ōrnāmentum*, -ī, N.  
 distinguished, *amplūs*, -a, -um;  
*clārus*, -a, -um; *nōbilis*, -e.  
 distract, detain, *distineō*, 2, *-tinuī*,  
*-tentus*.  
 distrust, v. *diffidō*, 3, *fīsus*.  
 disturb, *perturbō*, I.  
 disturbance, *tumultus*, -ūs, M.;  
*perturbātiō*, -nis, F.  
 divine, *dīvīnus*, -a, -um.  
 do, *agō*, 3, *ēgī*, *āctus*; *faciō*, 3, *fēcī*,  
*factus*; *committō*, 3, *-mīsī*, *-missus*.  
 do business, *negōtiōr*, I.  
 do wrong, *peccō*, I.  
 doctor, *medicus*, -ī, M.  
 don't, expressed by inv. of *nōlō*  
 with infinitive.  
 door, *iānuā*, -ae, F.  
 doubt, n. *dubitātiō*, -nis, F.  
 doubt, v. *dubitō*, I.  
 doubtful, *dubius*, -a, -um.  
 draw up, *instruō*, 3, *-strūxī*, *-strūc-*  
*tus*.  
 Drepanum, *Drepanum*, -ī, N.  
 drive out, put to flight, *fugō*, I;  
*expellō*, 3, *-pulī*, *-pulsus*.  
 due: be —, owe, *dēbeō*, 2.  
 duty, doing one's duty, *officiūm*,  
*-ī*, N.  
 duty of, expressed by pred. gen.

## E

each, *quisque*, *quaeque*, *quidque*  
*(quodque)*.  
 earth, *terra*, -ae, F.  
 ease, *ōtium*, -ī, N.  
 easily, *facile*.  
 easy, *facilis*, -e.



- Ebro, *Hibērus*, -ī, M.  
 Egypt, *Aegyptus*, -ī, F.  
 eight, *octō*.  
 eighth, *octāvus*, -a, -um.  
 elect, v. *creō*, I.  
 eloquence, *ēloquentia*, -ae, F.  
 else, see other.  
 embassy, *lēgatiō*, -nis, F.  
 eminent, *ēgregius*, -a, -um.  
 empire, *imperium*, -ī, N.  
 Emporiae, *Emporiae*, -ārum, F.  
 empty, empty-handed, *inānis*, -e.  
 enact (a law), *sanciō*, 4, *sānxī*, *sānctus*.  
 end, n. *finis*, -is, M.  
 endurable, *tolerābilis*, -e.  
 enemy, *hostis*, -is, M.; *inimīcus*, -ī, M.  
 engraved, *caelātus*, -a, -um.  
 engraver, *caelātor*, -ōris, M.  
 enjoy, *perfruor*, 3, -fructus.  
 enjoyment, *fructus*, -ūs, M.  
 enrich, increase, *augeō*, 2, *auxī*, *auctus*.  
 enter, *intrō*, I.  
 enter upon, *ineō*, 4, -īī, -itus.  
 entice, *adliciō*, 3, -lexī, -lectus.  
 envy, n. *invidia*, -ae, F.  
 envy, v. *invideō*, 2, -vīdī, -vīsus.  
 Ephesus, *Ephesus*, -ī, F.  
 equal, a. *pār*, *paris*.  
 equally as, *aequē ac*.  
 erect, v. *cōstituō*, 3, -uī, -ūtus.  
 escape, v. *effugiō*, 3, -fūgī, -fugitūrus; *ēlābor*, 3, *ēlāpsus*.  
 especially, most of all, *maximē*, *praesertim*.  
 eternal, *aeternus*, -a, -um.  
 even, also, *etiam*.  
 even, as far as, *ūsque*.  
 even if, *etiam sī*, *et sī*.  
 event, circumstance, thing, etc. *rēs*, *reī*, F.  
 ever, *umquam*.  
 evidence, *tēstimōnium*, -ī, N.  
 evil, *malum*, -ī, N.  
 example, *exemplum*, -ī, N.  
 exceedingly, *maximē*; to be exceedingly vexed, *gravissimē ferre*.  
 excel, *praestō*, I, -stitī, -stitus. See surpass.  
 excellence, *suāvitās*, -tātis, F.  
 except, conj. *nisi*; prep. *praeter* with the acc.  
 exemption, *vacatiō*, -nis, F.  
 exercise, n. *exercitātiō*, -nis, F.  
 exercise, v. *exerceō*, 2, -uī, -itus.  
 exhausted, *cōnfectus*, -a, -um.  
 exhort, urge, *hortor*, I.  
 exile, n. *exsilium*, -ī, N.  
 expect, *expectō*, I.  
 expectation, *opīniō*, -nis, F.  
 expel, *expellō*, 3, -pulī, -pulsus.  
 expense, *sūmptus*, -ūs, M.  
 experience, try, *experior*, 4, -pertus.  
 experienced in, *peritus*, -a, -um.  
 exploits, *rēs gestae*, *rērum gestarum*.  
 expose, *obiciō*, 3, -iēcī, -iectus.  
 express, declare, *dēclārō*, I.  
 extend, *pateō*, 2, -uī, —.  
 external, *externus*, -a, -um.  
 extinguish, *exstinguō*, 3, -stīnxī, -stīnctus.  
 extreme, a. *extrēmus*, -a, -um.  
 eye, *oculus*, -ī, M.

## F

- face to face, *coram*.  
 fail, be wanting, *dēsūm*, -esse, -fui, -futūrus.

faith, *fidēs*, -ēī, F.

faithful, *fidēlis*, -e.

false, *falsus*, -a, -um.

falsely, *falsō*.

fame, *fāma*, -ae, F.

family, *familia*, -ae, F.

famous: that —, *ille* following its noun.

far, adv. *longē*.

fate: meet one's —, *diem obeō*, 4, -iī, -itus.

father, *pater*, -tris, M.; *parēns*, -ntis, M.

fatherland, *patria*, -ae, F.

father's, paternal, *paternus*, -a, -um.

favor, v. *commodō*, 1.

favorably, *fēliciter*.

fear, n. *timor*, -ōris, M.; *metus*, -ūs, M.

fear, v. *metuō*, 3, -uī, —; *timeō*, 2, -uī, —; *pertimēscō*, 3, -timuī, —; *vereor*, 2, *veritus*.

feeble, *dēbilis*, -e.

feelings, mind, *animus*, -ī, M.

fellow, see *man*.

fellow-citizens, *Quirītēs*, -ium, M.

few, only a few, *paucī*, -ae, -a.

fight, *pūgnō*, 1; *bellō*, 1; fight a battle, *proelium faciō*.

figures (of ornamental designs), *sigilla*, -ōrum, N.

fill, *compleō*, 2, -plēvī, -plētus.

finally, *dēmum*, *dēnique*.

find, *inveniō*, 4, -vēnī, -ventus; *reperiō*, 3, *repperī*, *repertus*.

finish, *cōficiō*, 3, -fēcī, -fectus.

first, *prīmus*, -a, -um; at first, *prīmō*; in the first place, *prīmum*.

five hundred, *quīngentī*, -ae, -a.

flee, *fugiō*, 3, *fūgī*, *fugitūrus*; also *profugiō* and *cōnfugiō*.

fleet, n. *classis*, -is, F.

flock, run together, *concurrō*, 3, -currī, -cursus.

flourish, *flōreō*, 2, -uī, —.

flourishing, *flōrēns*, -entis.

follow, *sequor*, *sequī*, *secūtus*.

folly, *stultitia*, -ae, F.

fond, see *zealous*.

food, *cibus*, -ī, M.

for, conj. *nam*, *namque*, *etenim*, *enim* (postpositive); prep. *ad*; *in* with the acc.; *prō* with the abl. in the sense of *in behalf of*; *ob* with the acc. *for*, *because of*; often expressed by dative.

for this reason, therefore (rel.), for what reason, wherefore (interrog.), *quam ob rem*, *quā rē*, *quā dē causā*.

force (of strength), *vīs*, defect., F.; forces (of soldiers), *cōpiae*, -ārum, F.

foreign, *aliēnus*, -a, -um; *peregrīnus*, -a, -um.

forensic, belonging to the forum, *forēnsis*, -e.

foresee, *prōvideō*, 2, -vīdī, -vīsus.

forget, *oblivīscor*, 3, *oblītus*.

forgetfulness, *obliviō*, -nis, F.

forgive, see *pardon*.

form, v. *instituō*, 3, -uī, -ūtus.

former, *ille*, -a, -ud; *prīstinus*, -a, -um.

formerly, *quondam*.

fortunate, *fēlix*, -icis; *fortūnātus*, -a, -um.

fortune, *fortūna*, -ae, F. Often expressed by *rēs*, *rei*, F.

forty, *quadrāgintā*.

forum, *forum*, -ī, N.

found (a city), *condō*, 3, -*didī*, -*ditus*.

foundation, *fundāmentum*, -ī, N.

frankly, openly, *apertē*.

free, *liber*, -*era*, -*erum*.

freely, *liberē*.

friend, *amicus*, -ī, M.

friendly, *amicus*, -*a*, -*um*.

friendship, *amīcitia*, -*ae*, F., *famīliaritās*, -*tātis*, F.

from, *ā*, *ab*; *dē*; *ē*, *ex*; preps. with the abl.

from, expressed by a conj. after verbs of hindering, opposing, etc. *nē*, *quīn*, *quō minus*.

from all sides, *undique*.

full, *plenus*, -*a*, -*um*.

full (of an account), in Latin with many words.

funeral, *funus*, -*eris*, N.

furnish, equip, *ōrnō*, I.

further, *autem*.

## G

gain, accomplish, *cōsequor*, 3, -*secūtus*.

Galba, *Galba*, -*ae*, M.

game, *lūdus*, -ī, M.

gather, *conligō*, 3, -*lēgī*, -*lēctus*.

Gaul, *Gallia*, -*ae*, F.

general, n. *imperātor*, -*tōris*, M.

gift, *dōnum*, -ī, N.

give, *dō*, *dare*, *dedī*, *datus*.

gladiator, *gladiātor*, -*ōris*, M.

glory, *glōria*, -*ae*, F.

go, *eō*, 4, *iī*, *itūrus*; go away, *abeō*, also *recēdō*, -*cessī*, -*cessus*; go forth, *exeō*; go to lodge, *dēvertō*,

3, -*vertī*, -*versus*; go to meet, *obviam* (*prōd*)*eō* with the dat.

god, *deus*, -ī, M.

goddess, *dea*, *deae*, F.

godlike, *dīvinus*, -*ā*, -*um*.

going on: to be —, passive of *gerō*, 3, *gessī*, *gestus*.

gold, *aurum*, -ī, N.

golden, *aureus*, -*a*, -*um*.

goldsmith, *aurifex*, -*icis*, M.

good, *bonus*, -*a*, -*um*.

grain, *frūmentum*, -ī, N.

grandfather, *avus*, -ī, M.

grant, see give.

grave, a. *gravis*, -*e*.

great, *māgnus*, -*a*, -*um*; *grandis*, -*e*.

great heavens! *dī immortālēs*.

greatest, very great, *maximus*, -*a*, -*um*; *summus*, -*a*, -*um*.

greatly, *vehementer*, *māgnopere*.

greatness, *māgnitūdō*, -*inis*, F.

Greek, *Graecus*, -*a*, -*um*.

greet, see salute.

grief, *maeror*, -*ōris*, M.; *dolor*, -*ōris*, M.

grievous, *gravis*, -*e*.

groan, n. *gemitus*, -*ūs*, M.

grudge, v. *invidēō*, 2, -*vidī*, -*vīsus*.

guard, garrison, *praesidium*, -ī, N.

guardian, *tūtōr*, -*ōris*, M.

guardianship, *praesidium*, -ī, N.

guest, *convīva*, -*ae*, M.

guilt, see crime.

## H

hand, n. *manus*, -*ūs*, F.

hand down, *trādō*, 3, -*didī*, -*ditus*.

handle, *trāctō*, I.

hang, *pendēō*, 2, *pendī*, —.

Hannibal, *Hannibal*, -*is*, M.

**happen, it happens, accidit, 3,**  
*accidit; fit, fieri, factum est;*  
 usually followed by substantive  
 clauses introduced by *ut*. Often  
 expressed by *esse*.

**harbor, n. portus, -ūs, M.**

**hard, dūrus, -a, -um.**

**harmony, concordia, -ae, F.**

**hasten back, recurrō, 3, -currī, —.**

**hate, n. odium, -ī, N.**

**hate, v. ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus.**

**have, habeo, 2, habuī, habitus.**

**he, is, hic, ille.** Usually not ex-  
 pressed.

**head, caput, -itis, N.**

**hear, audiō, 4.**

**heart, see mind.**

**heaven, caelum, -ī, N.**

**Heius, Hēius, -ī, M.**

**Heraclius, Heraclius, -ī, M.**

**herald, praeco, -nis, M.**

**here, hic.**

**hesitate, dubitō, 1.**

**hide, dissimulō, 1.**

**Hiero, Hierō, -nis, M.**

**high, superus, -a, -um; altus, -a, -um;** (of rank) *amplus, -a, -um.*

**himself, suī; ipse, -a, -um.**

**hinder, impediō, 4.**

**hire, conducō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus.**

**his, suus, -a, -um, reflex.** When not reflex. usually expressed by *eius*, gen. of *is*.

**history, historia, -ae, F.; rēs gestae, rerum gestarum, F.**

**hither, hūc, illūc.**

**hold, teneō, 2, -uī, —.**

**hold, regard, habeo, 2; aestimō, 1.**

**home, see house.**

**honor, n. honor, -ōris, M.**

**honor, v. honestō, 1; ōrnō, 1.**

**honorable, honestus, -a, -um; am-  
 plus, -a, -um.**

**hope, n. spēs, speī, F.**

**hope, v. spērō, 1.**

**hospitable, hospitālis, -e.**

**hospitality, hospitium, -ī, N.**

**hostile, inimicus, -a, -um.**

**hour, hōra, -ae, F.**

**house, home, domus, -ūs, F.; aedēs, -ium, F.**

**how, quam, quem ad modum; how  
 many, quot; how much, how  
 great, quantum, adv., quantus,  
 -a, -um, a.**

**however, autem** in weak transitions,  
*tamen* in sense of *nevertheless*.

**hunt up, invēstīgō, 1.**

**hurry back, run back, recurrō, 3,  
 -currī, —.**

## I

**I, ego, meī.** Usually not expressed.

**if, sī; if not, unless, nisi.**

**ignorant, indoctus, -a, -um; imperi-  
 tus, -a, -um; ignārus, -a, -um.**

**ignorant: be —, ignōrō, 1.**

**illustrious, clārus, -a, -um.**

**image, imāgō, -inis, F.**

**imitate, imitor, 1.**

**immediately, statim, continuō.**

**immortal, a. immortālis, -e.**

**impatience, festinātiō, -nis, F.**

**implore, implōrō, 1.**

**importance: be of —, be influen-  
 tial, multum valeō, 2, -uī, -itūrus;  
 intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.**

**importance: of such —, tantī.**

**impose, impōnō, 3, -posuī, -positus.**

**in, in, prep. with the abl. Of an  
 author, apud with the acc.**

in part, partly, *par̄tim*.  
 in return for, *prō* with the abl.  
 inclining towards, *prōpēnsus*, -a, -um.  
 increase, tr. v. *augeō*, 2, *auxī*, *auctus*.  
 incredible, *incrēdibilis*, -e.  
 indication, expression, *sīgnificātiō*, -nis, F.  
 induce, *adducō*, 3, *dūxī*, -ductus.  
 industry, *industria*, -ae, F.  
 inexperienced, *rudis*, -e.  
 influence, see induce; also *adliciō*, 3, *lexī*, -lectus.  
 inform, *certiōrem faciō*.  
 inhabit, *incolō*, 3, *coluī*, —.  
 injure, *noceō*, 2, *nocuī*, —; *laedō*, 3, *laesī*, *laesus*.  
 injury, *iniūria*, -ae, F.  
 injustice, *iniūria*, -ae, F.  
 innocent, *innocēns*, -entis.  
 inspire, *iniciō*, 3, *iēcī*, -iectus.  
 instigate, *appōnō*, 3, *posuī*, -positus.  
 instruct, remind, *admoneō*, 2.  
 integrity, *integritās*, -tātis, F.  
 intend, see wish.  
 interest, be of concern, *interest*, *interesse*, *interfuit*.  
 intimacy, see friendship.  
 into, *in*, prep. with the acc.  
 intrust, *committō*, 3, *mīsī*, -missus.  
 invite, *invītō*, 1; *vocō*, 1.  
 island, *īnsula*, -ae, F.  
 it, *is*, *ea*, *id*.  
 Italy, *Ītalia*, -ae, F.

## J

January: of —, *Iānuārius*, -a, -um.  
 join to, *adiungō*, 3, *iūnxī*, -iūnctus.  
 journey, *iter*, *itineris*, N.

joy, *laetitia*, -ae, F.  
 judge, n. *iūdex*, -icis, M.  
 judge, pass judgment on, *iūdicō*, 1  
 judgment, *iūdicium*, -ī, N.  
 June: of —, *Iūnius*, -a, -um.  
 Juno, *Iūnō*, -nis, F.  
 jury, gentlemen of the jury, *iūdi-*  
*cēs*, -um, M.  
 just as, *tamquam*.  
 justify, *cōmprobō*, 1.

## K

kalends, *Kalendae*, -ārum, F.  
 keep, *retineō*, 2, *tinuī*, -tentus;  
*teneō*, 2, *uī*, —.  
 keep off, abstain, *abstineō*, 2, *tinuī*,  
*-tentus*.  
 kill, *interficiō*, 3, *fēcī*, -fectus;  
*occidō*, 3, *cīdī*, -cīsus.  
 kind, n. *genus*, -eris, N.; *modus*,  
*-ī*, M.  
 kindness, *cōmitās*, -tātis, F.  
 king, *rēx*, *rēgis*, M.  
 kingdom, *rēgnum*, -ī, N.  
 knight, *eques*, *equitis*, M.  
 know, *sciō*, 4; *nōscō*, 3, *nōvī*, *nōtus*;  
*cōgnōscō*, 3, *nōvī*, -nitus; not  
 know, *nesciō*, 4. See also per-  
 ceive.

knowing, a. *intelligēns*, -entis.  
 knowledge, *scientia*, -ae, F.  
 known, *nōtus*, -a, -um.

## L

labor, n. *labor*, -ōris, M.  
 Laelius, *Laelius*, -ī, M.  
 Laenius, *Laenius*, -ī, M.  
 land, n. *terra*, -ae, F.  
 land, bring to land (of a fleet),  
*appellō*, 3, *pulī*, -pulsus; come

- to land, *dēveniō*, 4, -*vēnī*, -*ventūrus*.
- language, words, *ōrātiō*, -*nīs*, F.
- Lanuvium, *Lānuvium*, -*ī*, N.
- large, splendid, *amplus*, -*a*, -*um*; *grandis*, -*e*.
- later, afterwards, *posted*.
- latter, *hīc*, *haec*, *hōc*.
- laud, see praise.
- laurel: crowned with —, *lauredus*, -*a*, -*um*.
- law, *lēx*, *lēgis*, F.; *iūs*, *iūris*, N.; break a law, *lēgem neglegō*.
- lawyer, *iūris cōsultus*, -*ī*, M.
- lay waste, *vāstō*, I.
- lead, *dūcō*, 3, *dūxī*, *ductus*; lead astray, *dēdūcō*; lead into, *indūcō*; prevail upon, *addūcō*.
- leader, *dux*, *ducis*, M. and F.
- learn, *cōgnōscō*, 3, -*nōvī*, -*nitus*.
- learned, *eruditus*, -*a*, -*um*.
- learning, n. *doctrīna*, -*ae*, F.
- least, adv. *minimē*; *minimum*; *levissimē*.
- leave, *relinquō*, 3, -*liquī*, -*lictus*. See also desert.
- leave off, *omittō*, 3, -*mīsī*, -*missus*.
- leave out, *praetereō*, 4, -*īī*, -*itus*.
- left, *sinister*, -*tra*, -*trum*.
- legally, *iūre*.
- leisure, a. *vacuus*, -*a*, -*um*.
- leisure, n. *ōtium*, -*ī*, N.
- length, *longinquitās*, -*tātis*, F.
- less, a. *minor*, -*us*.
- less, adv. *minus*.
- lessen, *minuō*, 3, -*uī*, -*ūtus*.
- let go, dismiss, *dīmittō*, 3, -*mīsī*, -*missus*.
- let pass, *praetermittō*, 3, -*mīsī*, -*missus*.
- letter (of the alphabet), *littera*, -*ae*, F.
- letter (correspondence), *litterae*, -*arum*, F.; *epistula*, -*ae*, F.
- levy, v. *imperō*, I.
- Licinius, *Līcīnius*, -*ī*, M.
- lieutenant, *lēgātus*, -*ī*, M.
- life, *vīta*, -*ae*, F.
- light, n. *lūx*, *lūcis*, F.
- like, a. *similis*, -*e*.
- like, v. see wish.
- like a human being, *hūmāniter*.
- likely to, use 1st periphrastic.
- Lilybaeum, *Lilybaeum*, -*ī*, N.
- little, adv. *paulō*; too little, *parum*.
- live, *vīvō*, 3, *vīxī*, *vīctus*; *habitō*, I; reside temporarily, *commoror*, I.
- lodge, *dēvertō*, 3, -*vertī*, —.
- lofty, *excelsus*, -*a*, -*um*.
- long, now for a long time, *iam diū*, *iam dūdum*.
- longing, *dēsiderium*, -*ī*, N.
- look at, regard, *spectō*, I.
- lose, *perdō*, 3, -*didī*, -*ditus*; *āmittō*, 3, -*mīsī*, -*missus*.
- loss, *dētrimentum*, -*ī*, N.
- lost: be —, *perish*, *excidō*, 3, -*cidī*, —.
- love, n. *amor*, -*ōris*, M.
- love, v. *amō*, I; *diligō*, 3, -*lēxī*, -*lēctus*.
- low, *īnferus*, -*a*, -*um*; *posterūs*, -*a*, -*um*.
- Lucius, *Lūcius*, -*ī*.
- Lucullus, *Lūcullus*, -*ī*, M.
- luxury, *lūxuria*, -*ae*, F.

## M

- Macedonia, *Macedonia*, -*ae*, F.
- mad: be —, *īnsāniō*, 4, -*īvī*, -*ītus*.

magistracy or magistrate, *magistrātus*, -ūs, M.

magnificence, *māgnificentia*, -ae, F.

make, *faciō*, 3, *fēcī*, *factus*.

make inquiries, *percontor*, I.

make light of, see neglect.

Malta, *Melita*, -ae, F.

Mamertini, *Māmertinī*, -ōrum, M.

man, *homō*, -inis, M. and F.; *vir*, -ī, M.

manifest, *perspicuus*, -a, -um.

manner, *ratio*, -nis, F.; kind, sort, *modus*, -ī, M.

many, *multī*, -ae, -a.

marble, *marmor*, -is, N.

Marcellus, *Marcellus*, -ī, M.

Martial, of Mars, *Mārtius*, -a, -um.

marvelous, *eximius*, -a, -um.

master, *dominus*, -ī, M.

matchless, *singulāris*, -e.

Maximus, *Maximus*, -ī, M.

May: of —, *Māius*, -a, -um.

meal, *epulum*, -ī, N. only sing. (in plur. *epulae*, -ārum, F.); *convivium*, -ī, N.

meanwhile, *interim*, *intereā*.

medicine, *medicīna*, -ae, F.

meet, assemble, *conveniō*, 4, -vēnī, -ventus.

meet with, *occurrō*, 3, -currī, -cursus; *obviā* eō, 4, *iī*, *itus*.

meeting, *conventus*, -ūs, M.

Megara, *Megara*, -ae, F.

memory, *memoria*, -ae, F.

mention, n. *historia*, -ae, F.

mention, v. *commemorō*, I; *dīcō*, 3, *dixī*, *dictus*; *nārrō*, I; see also say.

Mentor, *Mentor*, -oris, M.

merciful, *lēnis*, -e.

mercy, *miserīcordia*, -ae, F.; *lēnitās*, -tātis, F.

Messana, *Messāna*, -ae, F.; a citizen of Messana, *Māmertīnus*, -ī, M.

messenger, *nūntius*, -ī, M.

military affairs, *rēs militāris*, *rei militāris*.

military service, *militia*, -ae, F.

mind, *mēns*, *mentis*, F.; *animus*, -ī, M.

mindful, *memor*, -oris.

misery, *miseria*, -ae, F.

miss, see let pass.

Mithradates, *Mithraddtēs*, -is, M.

model, n. *exemplum*, -ī, N.

model, v. *fingō*, 3, *fīnxī*, *fictus*.

modestly, *verēcundē*.

modesty, *pudor*, -ōris, M.

money, *nummus*, -ī, M.; *pecūnia*, -ae, F.

month, *mēnsis*, -is, M.

monument, *monumentum*, -ī, N.

more, a. *plūs*, *plūris*.

more, adv. *magis* (of degree), *plūs* (of amount), *amplius* (of extent), *potius* (of preference).

moreover, *autem*.

mother, *māter*, -tris, F.

motion: make a —, *referō*, -ferre, *rettulī*, *relātus*.

mountain, *mōns*, *montis*, M.

mouth (of a river), *ōstium*, -ī, N.

move, *moveō*, 2, *mōvī*, *mōtus*; also *commoveō*.

much, many, *multus*, -a, -um.

much, adv. *multum*; by much, *multō*.

multitude, *multitūdō*, -inis, F.

municipal town, *mūnicipium*, -ī, N.



murder, see kill.

Murena, *Mūrēna*, -ae, M.

must, ought, need, etc. *oportet*, 2,  
*oportuit*; *dēbeō*, 2; *necesse est*;  
second periphrastic.

mutually, in turn, *mūtūē*.

my, *meus*, -a, -um.

## N

name, n. *nōmen*, *nōminis*, N.

name, v. *nōminō*, I.

nature, *nātūra*, -ae, F.; *ingenium*,  
-ī, N.

naval, *nāvālis*, -e.

nearly, almost, *prope*.

necessary, *necesse*, N. adj. indecl.;  
*opus* (with *est*). See also must.

need, n. *opus*, N. indecl.

need, v. *indigeō*, -ēre, -uī, —.

neglect, make light of, *neglegō*, 3,  
-lēxī, -lēctus.

neither, *nec*, *neque*; neither . . .  
nor, *neque* . . . *neque*.

never, *numquam*.

nevertheless, *tamen*.

new, *novus*, -a, -um.

next, adv. *deinde*, *tum*; adj. *proximus*, -a, -um; *posterus*, -a, -um.

next day, *postrīdiē*.

night, *nox*, *noctis*, F.

ninetieth, *nōnāgēsīmus*, -a, -um.

no, adv. *nōn*; adj. *nūllus*, -a, -um.

no one, *nēmō*, —, M. and F.

nobility, *nōbilitās*, -tātis, F.

nobility, the, *optimātēs*, -ium or  
-um, M. plur.; *nōbilēs*, -ium, M.  
plur.

noble, *nōbilis*, -e.

none the less, *nihilō minus*.

Nones, *Nōnae*, -ārum, F.

not, *nē* with subjv. and inv.; *haud*;  
*nōn*; not even, *nē* . . . *quidem*;  
not only . . . but also, *nōn solum*  
. . . *sed etiam*; *cum* . . . *tum*.

not know, be ignorant, *nesciō*, 4.

nothing, *nihil*, N. indecl.

notorious, *clārus*, -a, -um.

now, *nunc*, *iam*. Introductory  
now in a transition, *nunc*, *iam*,  
*autem*.

nowhere, *nūsqum*.

Numantia, *Numantia*, -ae, F.

number, *numerus*, -ī, M.; *multi-*  
*tūdō*, -inis, F.

## O

oak, *rōbur*, -oris, N.

obey, *pāreō*, 2, *pāruī*, —; *obtem-*  
*perō*, I.

object, v. *obiciō*, 3, -iēcī, -iectus.

observe, keep, *servō*, I.

obtain, gain, *pariō*, 3, *peperī*, *pari-*  
*tus* or *partus*.

obtain a request, *impetrō*, I.

occupation, *occupātiō*, -nis, F.

of, *ā* or *ab*; *dē*; *ē* or *ex*; or the  
gen.

off, see from.

offense, *peccātum*, -ī, N.

offer, show, *praestō*, I, -stitī, -stitus.

office, *honōs* (-or), -ōris, M.

officially, *pūblicē*.

often, *saepe*.

old, see ancient.

omit, *omittō*, 3, -mīsī, -missus.

on, near, by, *in*, prep. with the abl.;  
*apud*, prep. with the acc.

on account of, for, *propter*, *ob*,  
preps. with the acc.

once, formerly, *ōlim*, *quondam*.



one, *ūnus*, -a, -um; one . . . another, *alius* . . . *alius*; the one . . . the other, *alter* . . . *alter*.

only, adv. *tantum*; *solum*.

open, a. *apertus*, -a, -um.

open: be —, *pateō*, 2, *patuī*, —.

opinion, decision, *sententia*, -ae, F.; express an opinion, *sententiam dicō*.

oppose, *resistō*, 3, -stitī, —; *repugnō*, 1.

opulence, *cōpia*, -ae, F.

or, *an* (in double questions), *vel*, *aut*; or not, *annōn*, *necne*.

oration, *orātiō*, -nis, F.

orator, *orātor*, -ōris, M.

order, n. *ōrdō*, -inis, M.

order, v. see *command*.

ordinary, *mediocris*, -e; usual, *ūsitātus*, -a, -um.

ornament, *ōrnāmentum*, -ī, N.

other, *alius*, -a, -ud; alter, -a, -um; the others, the remaining, *cēterī*, -ae, -a; *reliquī*, -ae, -a; belong-

ing to another, *aliēnus*, -a, -um.

ought, see *must*.

our, *noster*, -tra, -trum.

out, from, *ē*, *ex*, prep. with the abl.

outside, *extrā*, adv. and prep. with the acc.

overcome, worn out, *cōfectus*, -a, -um.

overwhelm, *obruō*, 3, -ruī, -rutus.

own, a. *proprius*, -a, -um.

## P

painter, *pīctor*, -ōris, M.

pardon, v. *ignōscō*, 3, -nōvī, -nōtus.

part, *pars*, -tis, F.

partly, *partim*.

pass (of a resolution), see *make*.

pass judgment, *iudicō*, 1; *sententiam ferō*.

pass through, *perfungor*, 3, -fūctus.

patrician, n. *patricius*, -ī, M.

patriotism, *amor in patriam*.

pay, n. *mercēs*, -ēdis, F.

pay respects, salute, *salūtō*, 1.

peace, *pāx*, *pācis*, F.

peaceable, *quiētus*, -a, -um.

penalty, see *punishment*.

people, *populus*, -ī, M.

perceive, *perspicō*, 3, -spexī, -spectus; *animadvertō*, 3, -vertī, -versus; *intellegō*, 3, -ēxī, -ēctus; *sentiō*, 4, *sēnsī*, *sēnsus*; see also *know*.

perfected, finished, *perfectus*, -a, -um.

perform, *gerō*, 3, *gessī*, *gestus*.

perhaps, *fortasse*.

perish, *pereō*, 4, -itī, -itūrus.

permit, allow, *licet*, 2, *licuit*, —; *sinō*, 3, *sivō*, *situs*; *permittō*, 3, -mīsī, -missus.

persuade, *persuādeō*, 2, -suādsī, -suāsus.

pertain to, *pertineō*, 2, -uī, —.

Phaselis, *Phasēlis*, -idis, F.

philosopher, *sapiēns*, -entis, M.

pious, see *pure*.

pirate, *pīrāta*, -ae, M.

Piso, *Pīsō*, -nis, M.

pity, see *mercy*.

place, n. *locus*, -ī, M. (N. in plur.).

place, v. *locō*, 1; *pōnō*, 3, *posuī*, *positus*; place before, *prefer*, *antepōnō*; place upon, *impōnō*.

place of refuge, *perfugium*, -ī, N.

plainly, clearly, *plānē*.

plan, n. *cōsilium*, -ī, N.; *ratio*, -nis, F.; to form a plan, *cōnsilium inīre*.

plan, devise, meditate, *cōgitō*, I; *mōlior*, 4.

plead (a case), *agō*, 3, *ēgī*, *āctus*; *dīcō*, 3, *dīxī*, *dictus*.

please, *placēō*, 2, -uī, -itus.

pleasing, *iūcundus*, -a, -um; *grātus*, -a, -um.

pleasure, *voluptās*, -tātis, F.

plebeians, *plēbs*, -bis, F.

plunder or plundering, n. *fūrtum*, -ī, N.

plunder, v. *expilō*, I.

Pompey, *Pompēius*, -ī, M.

popularity, *grātia*, -ae, F.

possess, *possideō*, 2, -sēdī, -sessus.

posterity, *posterī*, -ōrum, M.

power, (*ops*), *opis*, F.

powerful, *firmus*, -a, -um; *potēns*, -ntis.

powerful: be —, *valeō*, 2.

praetor, *praetor*, -ōris, M.

praise, n. *laus*, *laudis*, F.

praise, v. *laudō*, I; *ōrnō*, I.

Praxiteles, *Prāxitelēs*, -ī, M.

pray, *orō*, I; *supplicō*, I; *precor*, I.

Parenthetically, *quaesō*, 3, —, —.

Sometimes expressed by emphatic *enim*.

precept, *praeceptum*, -ī, N.

prefer, wish rather, *mālō*, *mälle*, *māluī*, —.

prepare, *comparō*, I.

present, a. *praesēns*, -entis.

present: be —, *adsum*, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.

present, give, *dōnō*, I; present, lead forth (before the court), *prōducō*, 3, -dūxī, -ductus; present, produce (for inspection), *prōferō*, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus.

preserve, *retineō*, 2, -tinuī, -tentus; *cōnservō*, I.

pretend not, *dissimulō*, I.

prevail upon, see lead.

prevent, *prohibeō*, 2, -uī, -itus; *dēterreō*, 2, -uī, -itus.

price, *pretium*, -ī, N.

pride, *superbia*, -ae, F.

private, *privātus*, -a, -um.

privately, *privātim*.

proclaim, *prōnūntiō*, I.

promise, n. *prōmissum*, -ī, N.

promise, v. *prōmittō*, 3, -mīsī, -mīsus; *polliceor*, 2.

propose, *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātus*.

propraetor, *prōpraetor*, -ōris, M.

prosecute, *accūsō*, I.

prosecutor, *accūsātor*, -ōris, M.

protect, *tueor*, 2, *tūtus*; *tegō*, 3, *tēxī*, *tēctus*; see also defend.

prove, see teach.

provide for, consult for, *cōnsulō*, 3, -sulūī, -sultus.

provided that, *dum*, *modo*.

providential, *dīvīnus*, -a, -um.

province, *prōvincia*, -ae, F.

public, *pūblicus*, -a, -um.

public interest, *rēs pūblica*.

publicly, *pūblicē*.

Publius, *Pūblius*, -ī, M.

Punic, *Pūnicus*, -a, -um.

punishment, *poena*, -ae, F.

purchase, n. *ēemptiō*, -nis, F.

pure, *castus*, -a, -um.

pursue, *pērsequor*, 3, *pērsecūtus*.

pursuit, *studium*, -ī, N.

put out of the way, *tollō*, 3, *sustulī*,  
*sublātus*.

Pyrenees, *Pyrēnaeus*, -a, -um.

## Q

quaestor, *quaestor*, -ōris, M.

quickly, *celeriter*.

Quirites, *Quirītēs*, -ium, M. plur.

## R

rage, n. *furor*, -ōris, M.

raise, *tollō*, 3, *sustulī*, *sublātus*.

rank, n. *gradus*, -ūs, M.

rascality, see crime.

rather, *potius*.

ratify, *ratus*, -a, -um, with *esse*  
*iubēre*, as in *lēgem ratam esse*  
*iubēre*, to ratify a law.

ravage, harry, *vexō*, I.

read, *legō*, 3, *lēgī*, *lēctus*.

reader, *lector*, -ōris, M.

reason, n. *causa*, -ae, F.; for this  
reason, *quā dē causā*; *quam ob*  
*rem*; *quā rē*.

recall, *revocō*, I.

receive, *accipiō*, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus.

recently, *nūper*.

recline, *recumbō*, 3, -cubū, —.

recollection, *memoria*, -ae, F.

recommend, *commendō*, I.

recover, restore, *reficiō*, 3, -fēcī,  
-fectus.

recover, get back, *recuperō*, I.

recover health, *convalescō*, 3, -luī,

reduce, *redigō*, 3, -ēgī, -āctus.

refrain, *temperō*, I.

regard: personal —, partiality,  
*grātia*, -ae, F.

regard, v. see hold.

regret, see repent.

rejoice, *laetor*, I; *gaudeō*, 2, *gāvī-*  
*sus*.

relationship, *cognātiō*, -nis, F.

relative, n. *propinquus*, -ī, M.

religious scruples, religion, *re-*  
*ligiō*, -nis, F.

remain, be left, pass. of *relinquō*,  
3, -līquī, -līctus.

remaining, *reliquus*, -a, -um; (*cēte-*  
*rus*), -a, -um.

remarkable, *eximius*, -a, -um.

remember, *recordor*, I.

remit, release, *remittō*, 3, -mīsī,  
-missus.

remove, *tollō*, 3, *sustulī*, *sublātus*;  
*removeō*, 2, -mōvī, -mōtus (also  
*dēmoveō*); removed, *remōtus*, -a,  
-um.

renew, *renovō*, I.

repel, *prōpulsō*, I; *repellō*, 3, *rep-*  
*pulī*, *repulsus*.

repent, *paenitet*, 2, *paenituit*.

replace, *repōnō*, 3, -posuī, -positus.

reply, v. *respondeō*, 2, -spondī, -spōn-

*sus*; *rescribō*, 3, -scripsī, -scrip-

*tus*.

report, v. *adferō*, -ferre, *attulī*, *adlā-*  
*tus*; *nūntiō*, I.

republic, *rēs publica*, *rei publicae*, F.

reputation, *fāma*, -ae, F.

request, n. *rogātū*, M., only abl.  
sing.

requite a favor, reward, *grātiām*  
*referō*.

reside, see live.

resist, see oppose.

resolution of the senate, *senātūs*  
*cōnsultum*, -ī, N.

rest, v. *quiescō*, 3, -*ēvī*, -*ētus*.  
 restore, *restituō*, 3, -*uī*, -*ūtus*.  
 restrain, *comprimō*, 3, -*pressī*,  
   -*pressus*.  
 result, turn out, *eveniō*, 4, -*vēnī*,  
   -*ventus*.  
 retain, *retineō*, 2, -*tinuī*, -*tentus* ;  
   *cōservō*, 1.  
 return, intr. v. *redeō*, 4, -*īī*, -*itus* ;  
   *revertor*, 3, -*vertī* or -*versus sum*.  
 return, give back, *reddō*, 3, -*dīdī*,  
   -*ditus*.  
 Rhone, *Rhodanus*, -*ī*, M.  
 rich, *dīves*, -*itis* ; *locuplēs*, -*ētis*.  
 ridiculous, *rīdīculus*, -*a*, -*um*.  
 right, a. *rēctus*, -*a*, -*um*.  
 right, a. (of direction), *dexter*, -*tra*,  
   -*trum*.  
 right, n. *fās*, indecl. ; *iūs*, *iūris*, N.  
 rightly, truthfully, *vērē*.  
 ring, n. *ānulus*, -*ī*, M.  
 rise, *cōsurgō*, 3, -*surrēxī*, -*surrēc-*  
   *tus*.  
 river, *flūmen*, -*inis*, N.  
 rob, *praedor*, 1 ; *spoliō*, 1 ; see also  
   take away.  
 robbery, see plundering.  
 robe : flowing —, *stola*, -*ae*, F.  
 Roman, *Rōmānus*, -*a*, -*um*.  
 Rome, *Rōma*, -*ae*, F.  
 rostra, *rostra*, -*ōrum*, N.  
 rout, v. *fundō*, 3, *fūdī*, *fūsus*.  
 royal, *rēgius*, -*a*, -*um*.  
 ruin, n. *ruīna*, -*ae*, F. ; *calamitās*,  
   -*tātis*, F.  
 ruined : be —, perish, *pereō*, 4,  
   -*īī* (-*īvī*), -*itūrus*.  
 rule, v. *administrō*, 1.  
 rumor, *rūmor*, -*ōris*, M.  
 run away, *aufugiō*, 3, -*fūgī*, —.

run riot, be busy, *versor*, 1, *ver-*  
   *sātus*.  
 runaway, *fugitīvus*, -*ī*, M.

## S

sacrifice, v. *sacra faciō* ; *sacrificō*, 1.  
 safe, unharmed, *tūtus*, -*a*, -*um* ;  
   *incolumis*, -*e*.  
 safety, *salūs*, -*ūtis*, F.  
 sail, v. *nāvigō*, 1.  
 sailor, *nauta*, -*ae*, M.  
 sake : for the—of, *causā* with the  
   gen.  
 salute, v. *salūtō*, 1.  
 same, *īdem*, *eadem*, *īdem*.  
 sanctity, *religiō*, -*ōnis*, F.  
 sanctuary, *sacrārium*, -*ī*, N.  
 save, *servō*, 1.  
 say, *dīcō*, 3, *dīxī*, *dictus* ; *inquam* ;  
   *āiō* ; say in defense, *dēfendō*, 3,  
   -*fendī*, -*fēnsus* ; say . . . not,  
   *negō*, 1.  
 scanty, *exiguus*, -*a*, -*um*.  
 scarcely, *vix*, *nōn ferē*.  
 scheme, see plan.  
 Scipio, *Scīpiō*, -*nis*, M.  
 sea, *mare*, -*is*, N.  
 search for, *perquīrō*, 3, —, -*quīsītus*.  
 second, a. *secundus*, -*a*, -*um*.  
 secret plots, *īnsīdiae*, -*ārum*, F.  
 secretly, *occultē*.  
 see, *videō*, 2, *vidī*, *vīsus* ; *āspiciō*,  
   3, -*exī*, -*ectus*.  
 see to, care for, *cūrō*, 1.  
 seek, see ask.  
 seem, passive of *videō*, 2, *vidī*, *vīsus*.  
 Segesta, *Segesta*, -*ae*, F.  
 Segestans, *Segestānī*, -*ōrum*, M.  
 self, *īpse*, -*a*, -*um* ; intens. pron.  
 self-gratification, see pleasure.

sell, *vēndō*, 3, *-didī*, *-ditus*. Pass.

is *vēnēō*, 4, *-iī*, *-itūrus*.

senate, *senātus*, *-ūs*, M.

senate-house, *cūria*, *-ae*, F.

senator, *senātor*, *-ōris*, M.

send, *mittō*, 3, *mīsī*, *missus*.

send back, carry back, *reportō*, 1.

separate, v. *sēiungō*, 3, *-iūnxī*, *-iūnctus*.

serious, weighty, *gravis*, *-e*.

serve, *serviō*, 4.

serve as soldier, *mereō*, 2, *-uī*, *-itus*.

service, see advantage.

Servius, *Servius*, *-ī*, M.

sesterce, *sēstertius*, *-ī*, M., abbreviation HS.

set, see place.

set against, oppose, *oppōnō*, 3, *-posuī*, *-positus*.

set apart, *dispertiō*, 4, *-ivī*, *-itus*.

set before, *appōnō*, 3, *-posuī*, *-positus*.

set out, *proficīscor*, 3, *profectus*; *exēō*, 4, *-iī*, *-itus*. In a trans.

sense, *expōnō*, 3, *-posuī*, *-positus*.

set up, *īnstituō*, 3, *-uī*, *-ūtus*.

several, *plūrēs*, *-a*; *aliquot* (indecl.); *nōnnūllī*, *-ae*, *-a*.

severe, *sevērus*, *-a*, *-um*.

shame, *pudor*, *-ōris*, M.

shameful, *turpis*, *-e*.

shameful act, crime, *flāgitium*, *-ī*, N.; *scelus*, *-eris*, N.

shameless, *improbus*, *-a*, *-um*.

shamelessly, *impudenter*.

share, v. *commūnicō*, 1.

ship, *nāvis*, *-is*, F.

shoulder, *umerus*, *-ī*, M.

show, v. *expōnō*, 3, *-posuī*, *-positus*; *ostendō*, 3, *-tendī*, *-tentus*; *dēmōnstrō*, 1.

Sicilian, *Siculus*, *-ī*, M.

Sicily, *Sicilia*, *-ae*, F.

siege, *obsidiō*, *-ōnis*, F.

Silanus, *Silānus*, *-ī*, M.

silent: be —, *reticeō*, 2, *-uī*, —.

silver, silver plate, *argentum*, *-ī*, N.

similar, *similis*, *-e*.

sin, v. *peccō*, 1.

since, *cum*, *quoniam*.

Sisenna, *Sisenna*, *-ae*, M.

sit down, be seated, *adsidō*, 3, *-sedī*, —.

site, seat, *sēdēs*, *-is*, F.

situated, *positus*, *-a*, *-um*, perf. part. of *pōnō*.

six, *sex*.

six hundred, *sescentī*, *-ae*, *-a*; six-hundredth, *sescentēsimus*, *-a*, *-um*.

skill, *facultās*, *-tātis*, F.; *artificium*, *-ī*, N.

skilled, *perītus*, *-a*, *-um*.

sky, *caelum*, *-ī*, N.

slave, *servus*, *-ī*, M.; often *puer*, especially in the plural.

sleep, v. *dormiō*, 4.

small, *parvus*, *-a*, *-um*.

so, *ita*, *sic*, *tām*, *usque eō*; so . . . as, *tam* . . . *quam*.

so great, *tantus*, *-a*, *-um*.

so many, *tot*, indecl.

society, *societās*, *-tātis*, F.

soften, *molliō*, 4.

sold: be —, *vēnēō*, 4, *-iī*, *-itūrus*.

soldier, *mīles*, *-itis*, M.

some, *aliquis*, *-qua*, *-quid*.

some one, something, *aliquis*, *aliquid*; *quis*, *quid*; *quīvīs*, *quidvīs*; *nōn nēmō*, —. (For uses of these words consult the Gram.)

sometimes, *nōn numquam*.

son, *filius*, -ī, M.

son-in-law, *gener*, -ī, M.

soon, *mox*.

soon as possible, *quam primum*.

soothe, *dēlēniō*, 4, -īvi, -itus.

sorrow, cause for mourning, *lā-mentātiō*, -nis, F.

sovereignty, *imperium*, -ī, N.; *rēg-num*, -ī, N.

Spain, *Hispānia*, -ae, F.

spare, *parcō*, 3, *pepercī*, *parsus*.

sparingly, *parcē*.

Spartan, *Lacedaemonius*, -a, -um.

speak, *loquor*, 3, *locūtus*; *disputō*, 1.

See also *say*.

speech, discourse, *sermō*, -nis, M.

speedy, early, *mātūrus*, -a, -um.

spend, consume, *cōnsūmō*, 3, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus.

spend the night, *pernoctō*, 1.

splendid, rich, *locuplēs*, -ētis.

splendidly furnished, *ōrnātus*, -a, -um; *apparātissimus*, -a, -um.

spoil, n. *spolia*, -ōrum, N.

spread, *sternō*, 3, *strāvī*, *strātus*.

stand, *stō*, 1, *stetī*, *status*.

stand, endure, *perstō*, 1, -stitī, -stātūrus.

state, *civitas*, -tātis, F.; *rēs publica*, *rei publicae*, F.

state, condition, *status*, -ūs, M.

statue, *signum*, -ī, N.; *simulacrum*, -ī, N.; *statua*, -ae, F.

steal, *surripio*, 3, -uī, -reptus.

step, n. *gradus*, -ūs, M.

still, as yet, *adhuc*.

straightway, see *immediately*.

street, *via*, -ae, F.; *vīcus*, -ī, M.

strengthen, *cōfirmō*, 1.

strip, despoil, *spoliō*, 1.

strong, *firmus*, -a, -um.

struggle, n. *certāmen*, -minis, N.

subdue, *opprimō*, 3, -pressī, -pressus.

such, *talis*, -e (of quality); *tantus*, -a, -um (of size); such . . . as, *talīs* . . . *quālis*; *tantus* . . . *quantus*.

suffer, *patior*, 3, *passus*.

sufficiently, *satis*.

suicide: to commit —, *mortem sibi cōnsciscere* (*cōnsciscō*, 3, -scīvī, -scītus).

suited, adapted, *aptus*, -a, -um.

Sulla, *Sulla*, -ae, M.

Sulpicius, *Sulpicius*, -ī, M.

sum of money, *pecūnia*, -ae, F.

summon, *adhibeō*, 2; *arcessō*, 3, -īvi, -itus; *vocō*, 1.

suppress, *comprimō*, 3, -pressī, -pressus.

supreme, *summus*, -a, -um.

surely, see *certainly*.

surpass, *superō*, 1; *vincō*, 3, *vīcī*, *victus*; see *excel*.

surpassing, *praestāns*, -ntis.

surprise, *opprimō*, 3, -pressī, -pressus.

surprising, see *wonderful*.

surrounded, *stipātus*, -a, -um, perf. part. of *stipō*, 1.

suspicion, *sūspitiō* (-ciō), -nis, F.

sword, *ferrum*, -ī, N.; *gladius*, -ī, M.

Syracusans, *Syrācūsānī*, -ōrum, M.

Syracuse, *Syrācūsae*, -ārum, F.

Syria, *Syria*, -ae, F.

## T

table, *mēnsa*, -ae, F.

take, *capiō*, 3, *cēpī*, *captus*; take by storm, *vī capiō*.

- take away, *aufero, auferre, abstulī, ablātus; ēripīō, 3, -ripuī, -reptus; adimō, 3, -ēmī, -ēptus*.
- take care, *cūrō, 1*.
- take down, *dēmōlior, 4*.
- take heed, *caveō, 2, cāvī, cautus*.
- take ill, take to heart, *molestē ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus*.
- take part in, *intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus*.
- take up, consume, *sūmō, 3, sūmpsi, sūptus*.
- talent, *ingenium, -ī, N*.
- talk, see say.
- teach, *doceō, 2, docuī, doctus*.
- teacher, *magister, -trī, M*.
- tear, n. *lacrima, -ae, F*.
- tear off, *avellō, 3, -vellī, -vulsus*.
- tell, see say; also *nārrō, 1*.
- tell me, exclam. *quid*.
- temperance, *temperantia, -ae, F*.
- temple, *templum, -ī, N*.
- tender, offer, *adhibeō, 2, -uī, -itus*.
- tenth, *decimus, -a, -um*.
- terrified, *perterritus, -a, -um*.
- terror, *terror, -ōris, M*.
- testimony, *tēstimōnium, -ī, N*.
- than, *quam*.
- thank, *grātiās agō, 3, ēgī, āctus*.
- that, pron. *ille, -a, -ud; iste, ista, istud; that is, hōc est*.
- that, in order that, so that, conj. introducing a clause of purpose or result, *ut*; after neg. expression of doubt, *quīn*.
- that not, *nē, ut nē, ut nōn*.
- the . . . the, expressing degree of difference (with a comparative), *quō . . . eō*.
- theater, *theātrum, -ī, N*
- their, *suus, -a, -um* (reflex.). When not reflex. expressed by gen. of *is*. then, *tum*.
- thence, *inde*.
- there, *ibi, eō*. As introductory expletive not translated.
- therefore, *igitur, itaque, quā rē, quam ob rem*.
- Thespiae, *Thespiae, -ārum, F*.
- thing, event, circumstance, etc. *rēs, rei, F*.
- think, *arbitror, 1; existimō, 1; putō, 1*.
- third, *tertius, -a, -um*.
- this, *hic, haec, hōc*; with less demonstrative force, *is, ea, id*.
- thither, there, *eō, illūc*.
- though, *cum, quamquam, licet*.
- thousand, *mille, N*. Indecl. in sing.
- threaten, *minor, 1; immineō, 2, —, —*.
- threatening, a. *mināx, -ācis*.
- three years, *triennium, -ī, N*.
- through, *per*, prep. with the acc.
- thus, *sic, ita*.
- time, *tempus, -oris, N*; for a short time, *paulisper*.
- Tlepolemus, *Tlēpolemus, -ī, M*.
- to, when expressing purpose, *ut*; object of motion towards, *ad* or *in* with the acc. Often expressed by the dat. case or by the infin.
- toga, *toga, -ae, F*; dressed in a toga, *togātus*.
- together, expressed by *inter* with reflex. pron.
- too, also, adv. *etiam, quoque*.
- too, excessively, adv. *nimum*.
- torch, *fax, facis, F*.
- touch, v. *attingō, 3, -tigī, -tactus*.



towards, *ergā*, prep. with the acc.  
town, *oppidum*, -ī, N.

tranquillity, *tranquillitās*, -tātis.

transfer, *trānsferō*, -ferre, -tulī,  
-lātus.

traveler, *viātor*, -ōris, M.

treat, see discuss.

treaty, *foedus*, -eris, N.

Trebatius, *Trebātius*, -ī, M.

tribe, *gēns*, *gentis*, F.

trifling, a. *levis*, -e.

triumph, n. *triumphus*, -ī, M.

troublesome, annoying, *molestus*,  
-a, -um.

Troy, *Trōia*, -ae, F.

truly, *vērē*, *vērō*.

trustworthy, *certus*, -a, -um.

truth, *vērum*, -ī, N.; *vēritās*, -tā-  
tis, F.

try (of a case), *agō*, 3, *ēgī*, *āctus*.

two, *duo*, *duar*, *duo*.

## U

uncertain, *incertus*, -a, -um.

undertake, *suscipio*, 3, -cēpī, -cep-  
tus.

undertaking, *susceptio*, -nis, F.

unequal, *dispār*, -paris.

unexpectedly, *dē imprōvisō*.

unite, *coniungo*, 3, -iūnxī, -iūnctus.

unpopular, *invidiōsus*, -a, -um.

until, *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*.

unwilling: be —, *nōlō*, *nōlle*, *nōlūi*,  
—.

up to this time, *adhūc*.

upright, *integer*, -gra, -grum.

usage, custom, principle, *institū-  
tum*, -ī, N.

use, v. *utor*, 3, *ūsus sum*.

used. be wont, *soleō*, 2, *solitus*.

Utica, *Utica*, -ae, F.; belonging to  
Utica, *Uticensis*, -e.

## V

vain: in —, *frūstrā*.

valor, see virtue.

value, price, n. *pretium*, -ī, N.

value, estimate, v. *aestimō*, I.

Verres, *Verrēs*, -is, M.

very, intens. *ipse*, -a, -um; *sānē*;  
*admodum*.

vessel, *vās*, *vāsis*, N.

vested in, resident in, *situs*, -a,  
-um.

vice, *vitium*, -ī, N.

victor, *victor*, -ōris, M.

villa, *vīlla*, -ae, F.

violate, do violence, *violō*, I.

violent, *vehemēns*, -entis.

violently, *vehementer*.

virtue, *virtūs*, -tūtis, F.

visit, go to see, *visō*, 3, *vīsī*, *vīsus*.

voice, *vōx*, *vōcis*, F.

## W

wage, carry on, *gerō*, 3, *gessī*, *ges-  
tus*.

wait for, wait, *expectō*, I.

wake, be wakeful, *vigilō*, I.

walk, *ambulō*, I.

wall, *moenia*, -ium, N.; *mūrus*, -ī, M.

want, be lacking, *dēsum*, -esse,  
-fuī, -futūrus.

want of nobility, *ignōbilitās*,  
-tātis, F.

war, *bellum*, -ī, N.

warlike, *bellicus*, -a, -um.

warning, *monitus*, -ūs, M.

watchful, *vigilāns*, -antis.

wave, n. *fluctus*, -ūs, M.



- wax, *cēra*, -ae, F.  
 way, *via*, -ae, F.  
 weak, *infirmus*, -a, -um.  
 weaken, *labefactō*, I.  
 weakness, *infirmitās*, -tātis, F.  
 weapon, *telum*, -ī, N.  
 wear, *gestō*, I.  
 weary, v. *taedet*, 2, —, —.  
 weather (esp. favorable), *tempes-*  
*tās*, -tātis, F.  
 weight, *pondus*, -eris, N.  
 weighty, serious, *gravis*, -e; *pon-*  
*derosus*, -a, -um.  
 well, *bene*, *optimē*.  
 what, *quī* (*quis*), *quae*, *quod* (*quid*),  
 adj.; *quid*, N. subst.; what sort  
 of, *quālis*, -e; what of the fact  
 that, *quid quod*.  
 when, *cum*, *ubi*.  
 whence, *unde*.  
 where, *ubi*.  
 whether, *utrum*, -ne, *sī*, *num*; often  
 omitted in indirect double ques-  
 tions.  
 whether any one, whether any-  
 thing, *ecquis*, *ecquid*.  
 which, *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; which (of  
 two), *uter*, *utra*, *utrum*.  
 while, *dum*.  
 whither, *quō*.  
 who, which (rel.), *quī*, *quae*, *quod*.  
 who, which, what (interrog.),  
*quis*, *quae*, *quid*.  
 whoever, whatever, *quisquis*, *quic-*  
*quid*.  
 whole, *tōtus*, -a, -um. See also *all*.  
 why, *cūr*, *quid*.  
 wicked, *scelerātus*, -a, -um.  
 wide, *lātus*, -a, -um.  
 widely, *lātē*.  
 wife, *coniūnx*, *coniugis*, F.  
 wild, savage, *ferus*, -a, -um.  
 will, n. *arbitrium*, -ī, N.  
 will: good —, wish, *voluntās*,  
*-tātis*, F.  
 willing: be —, see wish.  
 win, *pariō*, 3, *peperī*, *paritus* or  
*partus*; *conciliō*, I.  
 winter, *hiems*, *hiemis*, F.  
 wisdom, *sapientia*, -ae, F.  
 wise, *sapiēns*, -ntis; wise man,  
*sapiēns*, -ntis, M.  
 wish, v. *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*, —;  
 stronger is *cupiō*, 3, -īvī, -ītus.  
 with, *cum*, prep. with the abl.;  
*apud*, prep. with the acc. When  
 denoting means, expressed by  
 the abl. without a prep.  
 within, *intrā*, prep. with the acc.  
 without, *sine*, prep. with the abl.  
 witness, n. *index*, -icis, M. and F.;  
*tēstis*, -is, M. and F.  
 witness, v., bear witness, *tēstor*, I.  
 wittily, *facētē*.  
 woman, *mulier*, -is, F.; as term of  
 contempt, *muliercula*, -ae, F.  
 wonder, v. *admīror*, I; *mīror*, I.  
 wonderful, *mīrus*, -a, -um.  
 wonderfully, *mīrificē*.  
 wont: be —, *soleō*, 2, *solitus*; *cōn-*  
*suēscō*, 3, -suēvī, -suētus.  
 word, *verbum*, -ī, N.  
 work, workmanship, *opus*, *operis*,  
 N.  
 work of art, *artificium*, -ī, N.  
 workshop, *officīna*, -ae, F.  
 world, *orbis* (-is, M.) *terrae* or *ter-*  
*rārūm*.  
 worship, v. *colō*, 3, *coluī*, *cultus*  
 worth, *dignitās*, -tātis, F.

worthy, *dignus*, -a, -um.

would that, *utinam*.

wound, n. *vulnus*, -eris, N.

wretched, *miser*, -era, -erum.

write, *scribō*, 3, *scripsī*, *scriptus*.

writing: a —, *scriptum*, -ī, N.

wrong, see injury.

wrong-doing, *delictum*, -ī, N.

## Y

year, *annus*, -ī, M.

yearly, *quotannis*.

yet, *tamen*.

you, *tū*, *tuī*, pers. pron.

your, sing. *tuus*, -a, -um; plur.

*vester*, -tra, -trum. Sometimes expressed by *iste*, -a, -ud, the demonstrative of the second person.

youth, *adulēscēns*, -ntis, M. and F.

## Z

zeal, *studium*, -ī, N.

zealous, *studiōsus*, -a, -um.



## SYNONYMS AND CONTRASTED WORDS

NOTE. — In this list only such words are given as are needed in the exercises, and only such broad distinctions of meaning have been noted as seemed most essential and most likely to be useful to young students.

**account, on account of : —**

*ob* signifies the object in view.

*causā*, the inner purpose.

*propter*, the outer motive.

Often expressed by the Ablative of Cause.

**again : —**

*iterum*, a second time, again.

*rursus*, again, of any number of times.

**all, see whole.**

**allow, see permit.**

**also : —**

*etiam* (*et + iam*) emphasizes the following word.

*quoque* adds a new thought and emphasizes the word it immediately follows.

**ancient, see old.**

**and : —**

*et* simply connects, with no secondary meaning.

*que* connects more closely than *et* and is especially common in uniting words closely related into a single whole.

*atque* (*ac*) throws emphasis on the second member.

**and : —**

*and not* should be rendered by *nec* or *neque*.

**announce : —**

*nūntiāre*, announce news.

*praedicāre*, make a public declaration, especially of some one's exploits or virtues.

*adferre*, bring word, carry news.

**army : —**

*exercitus*, a trained body of men, the usual term.

*āgmen*, the army on the march.

*aciēs*, the line of battle.

**ask : —**

*rogāre*, to ask a question; also, to ask for something.

*orāre*, a stronger word, to beg, pray.

*quaerere*, seek for information, inquire, especially of a judicial trial.

*petere*, seek by asking.

**begin : —**

*inire*, enter upon.

*incipere*, take in hand, used in tenses of incomplete action with following infinitive.

**begin** (*continued*):—

*coepisse* (like the preceding),  
used in tenses of completed  
action with following infinitive.

*ordīrī*, begin a continued piece  
of work, as *to begin a book*.

*īnstituere*, *establish* or *organize*  
for a definite purpose.

**but**:—

*sed* corrects what precedes; the  
usual word.

*at* makes a sharp contrast with  
what precedes, and is often  
used in argument to introduce  
an objection.

*autem*, much weaker than *sed* or  
*at*, continues the train of  
thought by a transition to  
something new, not necessarily  
opposed to what has been  
said. Always postpositive.

*vērō* (*vērūm*), *in truth*, gives  
prominence to what follows.

**call**:—

*appellāre*, *call, address*, by the  
right name or title.

*nōmināre*, *give a name, call by  
name*.

*vocāre*, *call, summon*.

**children**:—

*liberī*, *children*, with original emphasis  
on freedom of birth.

*puerī*, in respect to age, *boys  
and girls*.

**command**:—

*iubēre*, usual word.

*imperāre*, *command*, by right of  
authority.

*consider*, see *think*.

**daily**:—

*cotīdiē*, happening every day.

in *diēs* with expressions of increase  
or decrease.

**decide**:—

*statuere*, *cōstituere*, usual  
terms.

*cēnsēre*, *decide officially*, as of  
the senate.

*dēcernere*, *decide after deliberation*.

**deliver, set free**:—

*liberāre*, usually of persons.

*ēripere*, stronger than preceding  
word, of both persons and  
things.

**demand**:—

*pōstulāre*, *to demand*, as a right.

*pōscere*, *to demand*, with the expectation  
that what is asked  
must be granted.

*flāgitāre*, *to demand urgently*.

*desert*, see *leave*.

*desire*, see *wish*.

*determine*, see *decide*.

*discover*, see *find*.

**distinguished**:—

*celeber*, mostly of places, *famous,  
much visited*.

*amplus*, *large, magnificent, splendid*,  
fundamental idea one of  
size.

*clārus*, *brilliant*, for great deeds.

*īnsīgnis*, *noted* in good or bad  
sense.

*nōbilis*, *of distinguished birth,  
noble*, but also used of places  
and events.

either . . . or!—

aut . . . aut, the alternatives exclude each other, as *either true or false*.

vel . . . vel, a choice of alternatives is offered or one may take both or reject both.

sive . . . sive, when it is a matter of indifference which is taken.

enemy:—

inimicus, *a personal foe*.

hostis, *a public enemy*.

entire, see whole.

escape:—

effugere, with speed, from impending danger.

ēlābī, *slip away by stealth*.

especially:—

praesertim, *particularly*, used only before cum causal or sī.

maximē, of degree, *most of all*.

potissimum, of preference, *above all*.

famous, see distinguished.

fear:—

metuere, used of fear arising from motives of prudence, *rational fear*.

timēre, used of *cowardly fear*.

pertimēscere, to become thoroughly frightened.

formidāre, used of sudden *terror, panic*.

pavēre, *tremble with fear*.

verērī, to fear from sense of awe or respect.

The corresponding substantives metus, timor, formidō, and pavor differ in the same way.

find:—

invenīre, *find by chance*.

reperīre, *find by seeking*.

comperīre, *find with certainty*.

fire:—

īgnis, the usual word.

flamma, *a blazing fire*.

incendium, *a great fire, conflagration*.

flee:—

fugere, the usual word.

cōnfugere, *flee for refuge*.

effugere, *escape, flee from danger*.

perfugere, *escape* (and arrive at a secure place).

great:—

māgnus, the usual word.

amplus, grandis, *great*, with the added notion of splendor and magnificence.

ingēns, *huge, vast*, stronger than māgnus.

grief:—

dolor, *pain* either mental or physical.

maeror, *grief, sorrow*, silent and dumb pain of heart.

lūctus, *mourning*, as shown by the appearance and dress.

happen:—

fit, *it is done, it happens*, with no secondary implication.

accidit, mostly of unfortunate events (cf. Eng. *accident*).

contingit, mostly of fortunate events.

ēvenit, *it turns out*, as a result of previous circumstances.

**history :—**

*historia*, the written account.

*rēs gestae*, the events which make history.

**house :—**

*domus*, the usual word, *a dwelling*.

*aedēs*, a house or building with emphasis on the space inclosed by it.

*domicilium*, one's legal place of residence.

*sēdēs*, one's settled abode.

*aedificium*, a building of any kind, with emphasis on its structure.

**immediately :—**

*statim*, *on the spot, at once*.

*continuō*, with no intervening time.

**inhabit, see live.****judge, see think.****kill :—**

*interficere*, *kill* in any manner, the generic word.

*occidere*, *kill by blows, cut down*, especially in war.

*necāre*, *kill cruelly, murder*.

*trucidāre*, *butcher*.

**know :—**

*scīre*, *know, understand*, in widest sense.

*nōscere* (*cōgnōscere*), *learn, become acquainted with*, of personal acquaintance or otherwise.

*sentīre*, *know, by the senses and feelings*.

See also *perceive*.

**labor :—**

*opus*, the successful result of toil, *work*.

*labor*, *toil, exertion*.

**large, see great.****law :—**

*lex*, *statute law, written law*, as opposed to *mōs*, the unwritten law of custom.

*iūs*, *right, justice, the aggregate of laws*.

*fās*, *divine law*, that which is right before God.

**leave :—**

*relinquere*, *leave behind*, with no secondary implication.

*dēserere*, *leave, desert*, in a bad sense.

**letter :—**

*littera*, a letter of the alphabet.

*litterae*, anything written, *a letter*, also *literature*.

*epistula*, a more formal term, *a letter*, lays stress on its epistolary form.

**live :—**

*vīvere*, generic word.

*habitāre*, generally of individuals.

*incolere*, generally of tribes or people.

**long :—**

*diū*, *long* in time.

*longē*, *long, far*, in space.

**lose :—**

*perdere*, *lose absolutely*, beyond recall.

*āmittere*, *lose*, through fate or misfortune, what one misses.

love : —

*amāre*, to love from passion.

*diligere*, to love from respect and admiration.

man : —

*homō*, a human being, either M. or F.

*vir*, a man, as male, or as manly.

meal : —

*convivium*, a meal, with emphasis on its social character.

*epulum*, *epulae*, a meal, with emphasis on its sumptuous character, a banquet.

mention, see tell.

mercy : —

*lēnitās*, gentleness in conduct.

*miser cordia*, pity, springing from feeling in the heart.

mind : —

*ingenium*, inborn talent, genius.

*mēns*, mind, intellect.

*animus*, the soul, heart, as seat of the emotions.

money : —

*pecūnia*, generic term.

*nummus*, coined money, a piece of money.

must : —

*dēbere*, ought, of moral obligation to one's self.

*oportere*, ought, for reasons of personal expediency as well as of duty to others.

*necesse est*, must, of that which cannot be avoided, fate.

The second periphrastic is general and can take the place of any of these words.

name, see call.

need : —

*opus esse*, be in need of.

*carere*, be without, be free from, lack (perhaps unconsciously).

*egere*, *indigere*, be in absolute need of.

noble, see distinguished.

obey : —

*parere*, to do habitually what is ordered.

*obtemperare*, to conform to another's pleasure or desire.

old : —

*antiquus*, what was long ago, and is perhaps no longer.

*priscus*, stronger than the former, what once was and is no longer, old-fashioned.

*vetus*, what has long existed and perhaps still is.

on account of, see account.

or, see either.

*an*, used only in double questions.

other : —

*alter*, the other of two.

*alius*, another of more than two.

*ceteri*, the others of the same class.

*reliqui*, the rest, all that remain.

ought, see must.

perceive : —

*perspicere*, see through, see clearly.

*animadvertere*, turn the mind to, perceive.

*intelligere*, understand.

*sentire*, feel.



**permit : —**

*sinere, allow, let happen.*

*patī, suffer, in patience, what one would ordinarily resist.*

*permittere, permit willingly.*

*licet, permit what is allowable.*

**plan : —**

*cōnsilium, usual word.*

*ratio, the method for carrying out a plan, course, conduct.*

**plan, devise : —**

*cōgitāre, meditate, devise, ponder.*

*mōlīrī, plan, of some great and laborious work.*

**pleasing : —**

*amoenus, charming, beautiful, of the beauties of nature.*

*iūcundus, pleasant, delightful, in itself.*

*grātus, pleasant, grateful, because of its worth.*

**power : —**

*facultās, ability in general.*

*potestās, civil authority.*

*imperium, military power.*

*potentia, strength, might, that leads to power.*

**powerful : —**

*potēns, having power to exert.*

*firmus, having power to resist.*

**pray : —**

*orāre, beg, loudly and earnestly.*

*precārī, pray, as prayer to God.*

*supplicāre, beg humbly, with bent knees, conscious of the great power of him to whom we pray.*

**pretend : —**

*simulāre, pretend that a thing is so.*

**pretend : —**

*dissimulāre, pretend that a thing is not so.*

**promise : —**

*pollicērī, offer, of one's own accord.*

*prōmittere, promise faithfully, assure.*

**protect : —**

*tuērī, protect, guard against possible dangers.*

*tegere, protect, in the sense of shelter.*

*dēfendere, protect, ward off a real attack.*

**rejoice : —**

*gaudēre* indicates the emotion aroused by joy.

*laetārī* indicates the manifestation of the emotion.

**remove : —**

*dēmōvēre, move something from its place.*

*remōvēre, move back, take away.*

*tollere, lift up, remove by lifting.*

**reply : —**

*respondēre, reply to a question.*

*rescribere, reply to a letter.*

**report, see announce.**

**request, see ask.**

**right, see law.**

**ruin : —**

*calamitās, loss, disaster.*

*ruīna, crash, downfall.*

**safe : —**

*tūtus, safe from danger of attack.*

*salvus, safe, after attack.*

*incolumis, unharmed.*

## say:—

loquī, of conversational language.

dicere, the usual word for either formal or informal language.

inquam, *say I*, inserted in a direct quotation.

aiō, *say, assent*.

## see:—

vidēre, *see* with the eyes.

cernere, *see clearly*.

spectāre, *look at*, as a spectacle.

cōspicere, *look at*, with care and attention.

See also perceive.

## seek, see ask.

## several:—

Words of indefinite number run from few to many as follows:  
perpaucī, paucī, aliquot, nōn nullī, plūrēs, multī, plūrimī, plērīque.

## shameful act:—

flāgitium, with emphasis on the disgrace.

scelus, with emphasis on the impiety and wickedness.

## show:—

expōnere, *set forth, show*.

ostendere, *show, exhibit*.

dēmōstrāre, *prove*.

## skill:—

facultās, *skill* in general, *ability*.

artificium, *skill* of the artist.

## so:—

adeō, ūsque eō, *to such a degree*, used with verbs, adjectives, and adverbs.

tam, *so*, used only with adjectives and adverbs.

## so:—

ita, sic, *so, in such a way*, used only with verbs. *ita* usually refers to what precedes, *sic* to what follows.

## sovereignty:—

imperium, *supreme authority*, more rarely the *district* governed.

rēgnum, *regal dignity*, also the *district* over which the authority is exerted.

## speak, see say.

## spirit, see mind.

## state:—

cīvitās, *the organized state, citizenship* in the state, *body of citizens*.

rēs pūblica, *the commonwealth, the State, the republic; public interests, public affairs*.

## statue:—

sīgnum, simulācrum, generally of a god.

statua, used only of human figures.

## street:—

vīcus, *row of houses, quarter of the city, street*.

via, *a road, way*.

## strength:—

vīs, for offensive action.

rōbur, for defensive action.

## summon:—

vocāre, *call*, generic term.

cōvocāre, *call together, assemble*.

arcessere, *invite, fetch*.

adhibēre, *summon* for assistance, *employ*.

**surpass : —**vincere, *conquer.*antecellere, *be superior to.*praestāre, *stand before and above.*superāre, *be superior to, surpass.***take away : —**auferre, *carry off.*adimere, *take, deprive.*ēripere, *take violently, seize.*See also *remove.***tell : —**narrāre, *tell for one's information.*memorāre, *tell and make famous.*commemorāre, *mention boastfully.***thank : —**grātiā habēre, *feel thankful.*grātiās agere, *thank.*grātiā referre, *requite a favor.***think : —**opinārī, *suppose, whether correctly or incorrectly.*putāre, *reckon, think, a well-considered opinion.*sentīre, *an opinion based on the feelings.*existimāre, *weigh, judge.*arbitrārī, *believe, think, in consequence of sensual perception, not always sure.***think : —**cēnsēre, iūdicāre, *a formal opinion as of a judge or the senate.***wall : —**mūrus, *wall of any kind.*pariēs, *wall of a house.*moenia, *wall for defense.***want, see need.****whole : —**omnis, *in the singular every one (opposed to nēmō), in the plural all, regarded as a collection of units.*tōtus, *all, entire, opposed to separate parts.*cūctus, *all united in one body.*ūniversus, *all sharing alike, taken together.***wish : —**velle, *any kind of volition implying a purpose to obtain.*optāre, *wish, desire, often of a vain and extravagant nature.*cupere, *desire eagerly.*dēsiderāre, *longing for something that is missing.***woman : —**fēmina, *with emphasis upon sex.*mulier, *with emphasis on womanly character.*uxor, coniūnx, *a married woman.*mātrōna, *a matron with emphasis on dignity of character.*

## GRAMMATICAL SUMMARY

§ = Allen and Greenough; B. = Bennett; G. = Gildersleeve-Lodge;  
H. = Harkness; H-B. = Hale and Buck.

The references in parentheses are to the old editions.

### The Ablative Case

1. General Consideration, § 399 (242); B. 213; G. 384; H. 459 (411); H-B. 403.
2. Absolute, § 419, 420 (255); B. 227; G. 409, 410; H. 489 (431); H-B. 421.
3. Accompaniment, § 413. *a, b* (248. 7); B. 222; G. 392; H. 473. 1; 474 (419. I. 1); H-B. 418, 419, 420.
4. Agent, § 405. N. 1, N. 2 (246); B. 216; G. 401; H. 467, 468 (415. 1); H-B. 406. 1. *b*.
5. Cause, § 404 (245); B. 219; G. 408; H. 475 (416); H-B. 444. *c*.
6. Comparison, § 406, 407. *a, c* (247); B. 217; G. 398; H. 471 (417); H-B. 416. *d*.
7. Degree of Difference, § 414 (250); B. 223; G. 403; H. 479 (423); H-B. 424.
8. With *dignus* and *indignus*, § 418. *b* (245. *a*. 1); B. 226. 2; G. 397. 2; H. 481 (421. II1); H-B. 442.
9. Manner, § 412. *a, b* (248); B. 220; G. 399; H. 473. 3 (419. III); H-B. 445. 1-3; 422.
10. Means, § 408, 409 (248. 8); B. 218; G. 401; H. 476 (420); H-B. 423. *a*.
11. With *opus* and *usus*, § 411 (243. *c*); B. 218. 2; G. 406; H. 477. III (414. IV); H-B. 430. 1.  
Place, see **Place, Expressions of.**
12. Price, § 416, 417. *b, c* (252); B. 225; G. 404; H. 478 (422); H-B. 427. 1, 2. R.
13. Quality or Characteristic, § 415. *a* (251); B. 224; G. 400; H. 473. 2 (419. II); H-B. 443.  
Route, or Way By Which, see **Place, Expressions of.**

14. Separation, § 400, 401, 402 (243); B. 214; G. 390; H. 461-466 (414); H-B. 408. 1, 2, 3; 410, 411, 412.
15. Source, Origin, and Material, § 403. *a* (244); B. 215; G. 395, 396; H. 467-470 (415); H-B. 413, 406. 4.
16. Specification, § 418. *a* (253); B. 226; G. 397; H. 480 (424); H-B. 441.

Time, see **Time, Expressions of.**

17. With *utor*, *fruo*, etc., § 410. N. (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. I); H-B. 429.

### The Accusative Case

18. Adverbial, § 397. *a* (240. *a, b*); B. 176. 3; 185; G. 333; H. 416. 2 (378. 2); H-B. 388, 389.
19. Cognate, § 390. *a, c, d* (238); B. 176; G. 332, 333; H. 409 (371. II); H-B. 396. 1, 2.
20. Direct Object, § 387. *a, b* (237); B. 172 ff.; G. 330; H. 404 (371); H-B. 390. *a*.
21. Extent of Space, § 425. *a, b* (257); B. 181; G. 335; H. 417 (379); H-B. 397. I.
22. Infinitive, Subject of, § 397. *c* (240. *f*); B. 184; G. 343. 2; H. 415, 610, 612 (536); H-B. 398.

Motion, Limit or End of, see **Place, Expressions of.**

Time, Duration of, see **Time, Expressions of.**

23. With Verbs of Feeling (mostly impersonal), § 354 (221); B. 209; G. 377; H. 457 (406. I; 409. III); H-B. 352.

### Two Accusatives

24. Direct Object and Predicate Accusative, § 391, 392, 393. *a* (239. *a*); B. 177; G. 340; H. 410 (373); H-B. 392.
25. Person and Thing, § 394, 395. N. 3; 396. *a* (239. *b, 2, b, c, N. 1, R.*); B. 178; G. 339; H. 411-413 (374-376); H-B. 393. *a, b*.

### Agreement

26. General Forms of, § 280 (181, 182); G. 210, 211. R. 1; H-B. 316-318.
27. Adjective with Noun, § 285-287 (186, 187); B. 234, 235; G. 211, 285, 286; H. 394, 395 (438, 439); H-B. 320, 321, 323.
28. Noun in Apposition or as Predicate, § 281-284 (183-185); B. 167-169; G. 320-325, 386. R. 1; 411. R. 3; H. 393 (362-364); H-B. 319. I, II.
29. Relative with Antecedent, § 305, 306 (198, 199); B. 250; G. 614; H. 396-399 (445); H-B. 281. *a*.
30. Verb with Subject, § 316 (204, 205); B. 254; G. 211; H. 388, 390, 391 (460, 462); H-B. 328, 329, 331. 1; 332.

31. Verb with Two or More Subjects, § 317 (205); B. 255; G. 285-287; H. 392 (463); H-B. 329, 331. 3.

*alius* and *alter*

32. § 315 (203); B. 253. 1-3; G. 319; H. 516 (459); H-B. 279.

*antequam*, see **Temporal Clauses**.

**Apposition**, see **Agreement**.

**Arrangement of Clauses**

33. § 600, 601 (346); B. 351; G. 684 ff.; H. 681 ff. (570 ff.); H-B. 626, 629.

**Causal Clauses**

34. With *cum* and *quī*, § 540. *c, d*; 549, 535. *e* (320. *e*; 321. *c*; 326); B. 286. 2; 283. 3. *a*; G. 586, 626; H. 592, 598, 599 (517); H-B. 523, 526, 527.

35. With *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, and *quandō*, § 540. *a* (321. N. 3); B. 285, 286; G. 539 ff.; H. 588 (516); H-B. 555, 535. 2. *a, b*.

**Characteristic, Clauses of**

36. § 535. *a, b* (320. *a, b*); B. 283. 1, 2; G. 631. 1, 2; H. 591. 1 (503. 1); H-B. 520, 521. 1. *a-c*.

**Concessive Clauses**

37. § 527. *a-d*; 549, 535. *e* (313); B. 308, 309; G. 603 ff.; H. 586, 593. 2 (514, 515); H-B. 532, 556. *a*; 582. 8; 525, 526.

**Conditional Sentences**

38. With Indicative, or of the First Form, § 515. *a*; 516. 1. *a* (306, 307); B. 302; G. 595; H. 574, 575 (508); H-B. 579. *a*.

39. With Present or Perfect Subjunctive, or of the Second Form, § 516. 2. *b, c, d* (307. 2); B. 303; G. 596; H. 576, 577 (509); H-B. 580. *a*.

40. With the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive, or of the Third Form, § 517 (308); B. 304; G. 597; H. 579 (510); H-B. 581.

41. Conditions Contrary to Fact with the Indicative in the Apodosis, § 517. *c, d* (308. *c, d*); B. 304. 3; G. 597. 3. (*a*); H. 582, 583 (511. N. 3; 2); H-B. 581. *a*; 582. 3. *a*.

42. Comparison, with Omitted Apodosis, § 524 (312); B. 307; G. 602; H. 584 (513. II); H-B. 504. 3.

43. Conditions in which the Protasis denotes Repeated Action, § 518. *a, b* (304. *d*; 309. *a, c*); B. 302. 2, 3; G. 566, 567, 594. N. 1; H. 578 (508. 5); H-B. 504. 2; 540.

**Consecutive Clauses**, see **Result Clauses**.

**The Dative Case**

44. General Consideration of, § 361 (224); B. 186; G. 344; H. 422, 423 (382); H-B. 358.

45. With Adjectives, § 383, 384 (234); B. 192; G. 359; H. 434 (391); H-B. 362. I-III; 339. *c*.
46. Agent, § 374. *a* (232); B. 189; G. 354, 355; H. 431 (388); H-B. 373. 1, 2.
47. With Compounds, § 370. *a*; 371 (228); B. 187. III; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.
48. Indirect Object, § 362. *a*; 366 (225, 226); B. 187; G. 345, 346; H. 424 (384); H-B. 365.
49. With Special Intransitive Verbs, § 367 (227); B. 187. II; G. 346; H. 426-428 (385); H-B. 362. I-III.
50. With Passive Intransitive Verbs, § 369. *a*; 372 (230); B. 187. II. *b*; G. 208. 2; 346. 1; H. 426. 3 (384. 5); H-B. 364. 2.
51. Possession, § 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430 (387); H-B. 374.
52. Purpose or End, § 382 (233); B. 191; G. 356; H. 433 (390); H-B. 360, 361.
53. Reference or Interest, § 376 (235); B. 188; G. 352; H. 425. 1, 2, 4 (384. II. 1. 1), 2); 4); H-B. 366, 369.
54. Separation, § 381 (229); B. 188. 2. *d*); G. 347. 5; H. 427 (385. II. 2); H-B. 371.

**dum** with the Present, see **Indicative Mood, Present Tense.**

**dum, modo, dum modo**

55. In clauses denoting a Wish or Proviso, § 528 (314); B. 310; G. 573; H. 587 (513. I); H-B. 529.

**Emphasis**, see **Word-Order and Arrangement of Clauses.**

**Final Clauses**, see **Purpose Clauses.**

**Genitive Case with Nouns**

56. General Rules, § 342 (213); H. 437-439 (393-395); H-B. 337.
57. With Adjectives, § 349. *a-c* (218); B. 204; G. 374; H. 450 ff. (399); H-B. 354.
58. Apposition with a Possessive Pronoun, § 302. *e* (184. *d*); B. 243. 3. *a*; G. 321. 2; H. 393. 6 (363. 4. 1); H-B. 339. *b*.
59. Material, § 344 (214. 2); B. 197; H-B. 349.
60. Objective Genitive, § 348 (217); B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 440. 2 (396. III); H-B. 354.
61. Partitive, § 346 (216); B. 201; G. 367-372; H. 440. 5; 441-444 (397. *a*. 1-4; *c*, *e*); H-B. 346. *c*.
62. Possessive, § 343 (214. 1); B. 198; G. 362; H. 440. 1 (396. I); H-B. 339. *a*, *b*.
63. Predicate Genitive, § 343. *c* (214. 1. *c*); B. 198. 3; 203. 5; G. 366; H. 447 ff. (401 ff.); H-B. 340.

**Price**, see **Ablative of Price.**



64. Quality or Description, § 345 (215); B. 203; G. 365; H. 440. 3 (396. V); H-B. 355.  
 65. Subjective, § 343. N. I (214); B. 199; G. 363; H. 440. I (396. II); H-B. 344.

### Genitive Case with Verbs

66. With Verbs of Feeling (mostly impersonal), § 354 (221); B. 209; G. 377; H. 457 (406. I; 409. III); H-B. 352.  
 67. With interest and *réfert*, § 355 (222); B. 210 ff.; G. 381; H. 449 (406. III); H-B. 345.  
 68. With Verbs of Judicial Action, § 352 (220); B. 208; G. 378; H. 456 (409. II); H-B. 342, 343.  
 69. With Verbs of Plenty and Want, § 356 (223); B. 212; G. 383; H. 458 (410. V. 1); H-B. 347.  
 70. With Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting, § 350, 351 (219); B. 206; G. 376; H. 454, 455 (406. II); H-B. 350, 351.

### The Gerund and Gerundive

71. Genitive, § 504. *a, b* (298); B. 338. 1; 339; G. 428; H. 626 (542. I; 543 ff.); H-B. 612. I.  
 72. Dative, § 505. *a* (299); B. 338. 2; 339; G. 429; H. 627 (542. II; 543 ff.); H-B. 612. I, II.  
 73. Accusative, § 506 (300); B. 338. 3; 339; G. 430, 432; H. 628 (542. III; 543 ff.); H-B. 612. III.  
 74. Ablative, § 507 (301); B. 338. 4; 339; G. 431, 433; H. 629-631 (542. IV; 543 ff.); H-B. 612. IV.

### Hortatory or Volitive Subjunctive

75. § 439, 450 (3) (266. R. *b*); B. 273-276; G. 263, 264; H. 559. 1, 2 (483. 3; 484. II, IV); H-B. 500, 501. 2, 3.

### Imperative Mood

76. § 448-450 (269. *d, e*); B. 281. 1, 2; G. 266, 267. R.; H. 560, 561 (487. 1, 2; 488, 489); H-B. 495, 496, 501. 3. *a. 1*), 2).

### Tenses of the Indicative Mood

77. General Consideration, § 437 (264); B. 257, 258; G. 222-226; H. 523, 524 (474, 475); H-B. 468.  
 78. Present, § 465, 466, 469 (276); B. 259, 293. I; G. 227-230; H. 532, 533 (466, 467); H-B. 468. I; 491. I; 485.  
 79. Imperfect, § 470, 471. *a, b, c* (277. N. *a, b, c*); B. 260; G. 231-234; H. 530, 534. 2, 3; 535 (468, 469. I, II. 1, 2); H-B. 468. 2; 484, 485.  
 80. Perfect, § 161, 473, 474, 476 (115. *c*; 279. *a, e*); B. 262; G. 235, 236, 239, 240; H. 538 (471. 1, 2, 3); H-B. 468. 4. *a*; 487, 489.



81. Future, Future Perfect, and Pluperfect, § 472, 477, 478 (278, 281, 280); B. 261, 264, 263; G. 242-244, 241; H. 536, 540, 539 (470, 473, 472); H-B. 468. 3, 5, 6; 494.

### Indirect Discourse

82. Commands, § 588. *a. N. 1, N. 2* (339); B. 316; G. 652; H. 642 (523. III); H-B. 538.

### Conditions

83. With the Indicative, or of the First Class, § 589. *a* (337. 1, 2; Ex. 1, 2, 3); B. 319; G. 595. R. 1; 656. 1, 2; 657; H. 646 (527. I); H-B. 534. 1. *b*; 2; 536.
84. With the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, or of the Second Class, § 589. *a. 3* (337. 1, 2. *a. Ex. 3*); B. 320; G. 658; H. 646 (527. II); H-B. 534. 1. *b*; 580.
85. With the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive, or of the Third Class, § 589. *b. 1-4. N. 1, N. 3* (337. *b. 1, 2, 3*); B. 321, 322; G. 659; H. 647 (527. III. N. 1); H-B. 581. *b. 1*), N.; 472. *c*.
86. Passive Apodoses in Indirect Discourse, § 589. *b. 3*; 569. *a* (337. *b. 3*; 288. *f*); B. 270. 3; 321. 1, 2; G. 248. N. 3; H. 647. 2; 619. 2 (527. III. N. 1; 537. 3); H-B. 472. *c*.
87. Declaratory Sentences, § 578-585 (336. 1, 2. *a, b, c. N. 1, N. 2*; 336. A; 336. B); B. 313, 314, 317, 318; G. 648, 649, 650, 653-655; H. 641-645, 617-620 (522, 523. I; 524-526, 537); H-B. 533, 534. 1, 2; 589, 591, 593.
88. Implied or Informal Indirect Discourse, § 592. 1, 2, 3 (340, 341); B. 323; G. 508. 3; 628, 663. 2; H. 649. I (528. 1); H-B. 535. 1. *a*; 536. *a*.
89. Interrogative Sentences in Indirect Discourse, § 586, 587 (338); B. 315; G. 651; H. 642 (523. II); H-B. 537.

### Infinitive Mood

90. Complementary Infinitive, § 456-458 (271); B. 328; G. 423; H. 607, 608 (533); H-B. 586. *a*.
91. Historical Infinitive, § 463. N. (275); B. 335; G. 647; H. 610 (536. 1); H-B. 595.
92. As Object, § 459, 579, 563. *a, b* (272, 330. B); B. 329, 331, 332; G. 526-533; H. 534, 535 (414, 613, 614); H-B. 589, 587.
93. As Subject or Predicate, § 452, 454 (270. 1. *a, b*; 272. R. 2; 330. *a, b, c*); B. 325-327, 329, 330, 332. N.; G. 419-422, 535; H. 611, 615, 616. 1 (534. 1. N. 1, N. 2; 538, 539. I); H-B. 597. 1. *a*); 585, 589, 590. 1, 2.

94. Tenses of the Infinitive, § 486, 584 (288, 336. A); B. 270; G. 281. 530, 531; H. 617-620 (537); H-B. 472, 593. *a*.

**Locative**, see **Place**, **Expressions of**.

**Optative Subjunctive**

95. § 441, 442 (267. *a, b*); B. 279; G. 260, 261; H. 558. 1, 2 (483. 1. 2, 3; 484. I); H-B. 510, 511. 1.

**The Participle**

96. General Consideration, § 488 (289); H. 636 (548); H-B. 599. *a, b, c*.  
 97. Adjective and Predicate Uses, § 494. *a*; 495, 496 (291, 292); B. 337; G. 664 ff.; H. 637, 638 (549); H-B. 320, 604. 1-7.  
 98. Future Passive Participle (Gerundive) denoting Purpose, § 500. 4 (294. *d*); B. 337. 7. *b*, 2); G. 430; H. 622 (544. N. 2); H-B. 605. 2.  
 99. Second Periphrastic Conjugation, § 194. *b, c*; 196, 500. 2 (129, 294. *b*); B. 115, 337. *b*. 1); G. 251; H. 237 (234); H-B. 162, 600. 3.  
 100. Tenses of the Participle, § 489-493 (290); B. 336; G. 282; H. 640 (550); H-B. 600. 1, 2, 3, 4; 602. 1, 2.

**Place, Expressions of**

101. Locative, § 427. 3. *a* (258. *c. 2*; *d, e*); B. 232; G. 411; H. 78. 4; 83. 4; 108 (48. 4; 51. 8; 66. 4); H-B. 449. *a*; 454. 1-3.  
 102. Place at or in which, § 426. 3; 427. 3; 428. *b, d. N. 1* (258. *c, f*); B. 228; G. 385-387; H. 483, 485. 1 (425. I, II. 2); H-B. 436, 449.  
 103. Place by, through, or over which, § 429. *a* (258. *g*); B. 218. 9; G. 389; H. 476 (420. 3); H-B. 426.  
 104. Place from which, § 426. 1; 427. 1; 428. *b, e, f* (258. *a*); B. 229; G. 390, 391; H. 461, 462. 1, 4 (412. I, II. 1); H-B. 409, 451.  
 105. Place to which, § 426. 2; 427. 2; 428. *b, c* (258. *b*); B. 182. 1, 2; G. 337. 1-3; H. 418. 4 (380. I, II. 1); H-B. 385, 450.  
 106. Place towards which, § 428. *a, c* (258. *b. N. 2*; *c. 2. N. 1*); B. 182. 3; G. 337. 4; H. 418. 4; 462. 3 (380. 1; 412. 3. N.); H-B. 453.  
 107. Summary of Place Relations, § 426, 427; H. 491. I, II (427, 428).  
 108. Words Used Like Names of Towns, § 427. *a*; 429. 1, 2 (258. *c. R.*; *d, f. 1, 2*; B. 228. 1. *b*, *c*); G. 385. N. 1; 388; H. 419. 1; 462. 4; 484. 1, 2 (380. II. 2. 1), 2); 412. 1; 426. 1, 2); H-B. 449. *a*; 436. *a, b*.

**Potential Subjunctive**

109. § 446, 447. 1, 2, 3 (311. I, II); B. 280; G. 257-259; H. 552-557 (485, 486); H-B. 516, 517. 1; 518, 519. 1. *a, b*.

**Prohibitions, see Imperative Mood.**

**Pronouns, see also Agreement.**

110. Demonstrative, § 296-298 (100-102, 195); B. 246-249; G. 305-311; H. 505-507 (450-452); H-B. 271-274, 267-270.
111. Indefinite, § 309, 310. *a*; 311, 314. 1, 2. *a* (202); B. 252; G. 313-319; H. 512-515 (455-459); H-B. 276.
112. Interrogative, § 333 (104); B. 90; G. 106; H. 511 (454); H-B. 275.
113. Personal, § 295 (194); B. 242; G. 304; H. 500 (446); H-B. 254, 255, 257.
114. Possessive, § 302. *a, c, d, e* (197); B. 243; G. 312; H. 501 (447); H-B. 254, 256, 258.
115. Reflexive, § 299. *a*; 300. 1, 2 (196); B. 244; G. 309; H. 502-504 (448, 449); H-B. 260, 262. 1, 2.
116. Relative, § 304-307. *a, b. N.; e*; 308. *a, c* (197. 5-201); B. 250, 251; G. 610 ff.; H. 510 (453); H-B. 281, 282, 284. 1-6.

**Proviso, Clauses of, see dum, dum modo.**

**Purpose or Final Clauses**

117. Pure and Relative Clauses of Purpose, § 530, 531 (317. 1, 2. *b*); B. 282; G. 543, 544. 1; 545; H. 568, 590 (497); H-B. 502. 2.
118. Substantive Clauses of Purpose, § 563, 564 (317. 3; 331); B. 294-296; G. 546-550; H. 564-567, 568. 2 (498, 499); H-B. 502. 3, 4.

See also **Supine, Gerund and Gerundive, and Participle.**

**Questions**

119. Direct, § 330-337 (210-212); B. 162; G. 450-459, 471; H. 378-380 (351-353); H-B. 231-234.
120. Indirect, § 330. 2; 573-575. *a* (210. 2; 334); B. 300; G. 460, 467; H. 649. II. 1, 2, 3; 650. 1, 2; 651 (529. I, II. 1. N. 1, N. 3; 3. 1), 2); 4. 5); H-B. 537. *b, c, d*; 507. 3.
121. Rhetorical or Deliberative Questions, § 444 (268); B. 277; G. 465, 466; H. 559. 4 (484. V); H-B. 503, 513. 1.

**quā, see Result Clauses.**

**quod, quia, etc., see Causal Clauses.**

**Result or Consecutive Clauses**

122. Pure and Relative Clauses of Result, § 537. 1, 2. *a*; 538 (319. 1, 2. *R., a*); B. 284. 1, 2; G. 552, 631; H. 570, 591 (500. I, II); H-B. 521. 2.
123. Substantive Clauses of Result, § 568-571 (332. *a. 1, 2*); B. 297; G. 553; H. 571 (501); H-B. 521. 3. *a*), *b*).

**124.** *quān* and *quōminus* Clauses, § 558, 559 (319. *d*; 332. *g. R.*, N. 2); B. 284. 3; 295. 3; 298; G. 549, 554, 555, 556; H. 594. II; 595, 596 (504, 505. I. 1; II); H-B. 502. 3. *b*); 519. 4. *b*); 521. 1, 2, 3. *b*).

**125.** Relative Clauses of Characteristic or Result after *dignus*, *indignus*, etc., § 535. *f* (320. *f*); B. 282. 3; G. 631. 1; H. 591. 5-7 (503. II); H-B. 513. 3.

### The Subjunctive

**126.** General Consideration, § 438 (265); B. 272; G. 255, 256; H. 193, 194 (196. I, II); H-B. 462.

(The various subjv. constructions are given in alphabetical order.)

### Subjunctive of Integral Part or Attraction

**127.** § 593. *a. N.* 1, N. 2 (342); B. 324; G. 629, 663; H. 652 (529. II); H-B. 539.

### Substantive Clauses introduced by *quod*

**128.** § 572 (333); B. 299; G. 524, 525; H. 588. 3 (540. IV); H-B. 552.

### Supine

**129.** In *-um*, § 509 (302); B. 340; G. 435; H. 633 (546); H-B. 618.

**130.** In *-ū*, § 510 (303); B. 340. 2; G. 436; H. 635 (547); H-B. 619.

### Temporal Clauses

**131.** With *antequam* and *priusquam*, § 551 (327); B. 291, 292; G. 574-577; H. 605 (520); H-B. 507. 4. *a-d*; 550. *b*; 561, 571.

**132.** With *cum*, § 545, 546. N. 3 (325); B. 288, 289; G. 578-585; H. 600, 601 (521); H-B. 524, 525, 550. *a*; 551.

**133.** With *dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, § 553-556 (328); B. 293; G. 571, 572; H. 603 (519); H-B. 507. 5; 550. *b*; 559, 560.

**134.** With *postquam*, *ut*, *ubi*, *simul ac*, etc., § 543. *a* (323, 324); B. 287; G. 561 ff.; H. 602 (518); H-B. 550, 557, 558.

### Tenses, Sequence of

**135.** General Rules, § 482-484 (284-286. R.); B. 266, 267; G. 509 ff.; H. 543-545 (490-494); H-B. 476.

**136.** Peculiarities in Tense-Sequence, § 485. *a, b, c, e, g, h* (287. *a, b, c, e, f*); B. 268. 1-6; G. 509. 2; H. 546-550 (495. I-VI); H-B. 478.

### Time, Expressions of

**137.** Time before or after an event, § 424. *f* (259. *d*); B. 357. 1; G. 336. 3; 403. 4; H. 488. 1, 2, N. 2 (430. N. I. 1)-3); N. 3); H-B. 424. 387. II. *b*.

138. Time **how long** or **during which**, § 423, 424. *c* (256-259. *c*); B. 181; G. 336; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387. II.
139. Time **when** or **within which**, § 423, 424. *d, c* (256, 259. *a, c*); B. 230, 231; G. 393; H. 486, 487 (429); H-B. 439.
140. Use of Prepositions in Expressions of Time, § 424. *a, e* (256. *a*; 259. *b*); B. 181. 2; 230. 2; G. 336, 394; H. 487. 1, 2 (429. 1, 2); H-B. 439. *a*; 387. II. *a*.

### Word-Order

141. General Principles, § 595-597. *a* (343, 344. R. *a*); B. 348, 349; G. 671-674; H. 663-670 (559-564); H-B. 621-623.
142. Special Rules, § 598 (344. *a*. 1, 2; *b, c, g, j, k*); 599. *a-f* (345. *a-e*); B. 350. 1-10; G. 675-681; H. 671-680 (565-569); H-B. 624, 625. I-III.













